

# nodegrid

## User Guide v5.0

ZPE Systems, Inc.

#### Contents

About the Nodegrid v5.0 User Guide	1
Notifications	1
Credits	
Product Overview	2
Nodegrid Serial Console	
Nodegrid Serial Console - S Series	
Nodegrid Serial Console - R Series	5
Nodegrid Serial Console - T Series	
Nodegrid Services Router Family	9
Nodegrid Services Router	
Nodegrid Services Router Expansion Modules	
Nodegrid Gate SR	
Nodegrid Bold SR	
Nodegrid Link SR	
Nodegrid Manager	
Installation	
Hardware Installation	
Shipping Box Contents	
Installation of Modules for Nodegrid Services Router	
M.2 Cellular Antenna Placement	
Device Power Connections	
Rack Mounting	
Network Connection	
Power Cord(s) Connection	
Connect Target Devices	
Serial Target Devices	
IP Target Devices	
Connect to a Nodegrid Device	
Connect to the Console Port	
ETH0 Connection	40
WiFi Connection	
Bluetooth® Connection	
KVM Port Connection	
I/O Ports (GPIO)	
Import / Export Configuration	
Export Configuration Settings	
Import Configuration Settings	
Nodegrid Manager Installation	
Create a VMware Virtual Machine	
Install Nodegrid Manager Software	
Initial Network Configuration	
Access the CLI Window	
Identify Current IP Address	
Define Static IP Address	
General Information	
User Interfaces	
WebUI View	
CLI Interface	
Shell Access	
Access to Devices	
Device Sessions	
CLI Device Sessions	
Search Functionality	

Version	i 5.0
---------	-------

Device Search	
Global Search	61
Access Section	61
Table tab	
Buttons	
View Device Power Details	
Tree tab	
Expand View Column Branches	
Node tab	
Map tab	
Image tab	
Tracking Section	
Open Sessions tab	
Sessions Table sub-tab	
Devices Table sub-tab	
Event List tab	
Statistics sub-tab	
Events sub-tab	
System Usage tab	
Memory Usage sub-tab	
CPU Usage sub-tab	
Disk Usage sub-tab	
Discovery Logs tab	
Reset Logs	
Network tab	
Interface sub-tab	
Switch Interface sub-tab	
LLDP sub-tab	
Routing Table sub-tab	
Devices tab	77
Serial Statistics sub-tab	
USB Devices sub-tab	
Wireless Modem sub-tab	
Scheduler tab	
HW Monitor tab	
Thermal sub-tab	
Power sub-tab	
USB Sensors (or I/O Ports) sub-tab	
I/O Ports (GPIO) sub-tab	
System Section	81
License tab	
Manage Licenses	81
Preferences tab	
Nodegrid Location	
Session Idle Timeout	
Nodegrid Configuration	
Login Page Logo Image	
Login Banner Message	85
Utilization Rate Events	
Serial Console	
Power Supplies	
Network Boot	
PXE Boot	
Date and Time tab	
Local Settings sub-tab	

NTP Authentication sub-tab	
Toolkit tab	
Reboot	94
Shutdown	94
Software Upgrade	94
Save Settings	
Apply Settings	
Restore to Factory Default Settings	
System Configuration Checksum	
System Certificate	
Network Tools	
API	
Diagnostic Data	
Logging tab	
Custom Fields tab	
Dial-Up tab	
Services sub-tab	
Callback Users sub-tab	
Scheduler tab	
Manage Tasks	
SMS tab (only with installed cellular module)	
SMS Settings sub-tab	
CLI Examples: SMS Actions and Messages	
Whitelist sub-tab	
I/O Ports tab (only with GPIO)	
Network Section	
Settings tab	
Hostname and Domain Name	
Network Failover	
Network Failover for Wireless Connections	
IPv4 and IPv6 Profile	
Connections tab	
Bonding Interfaces	
Ethernet Interfaces	
Mobile Broadband GSM Interface	
Enable Data Usage Monitoring	
Enable IP Passthrough	
VLAN Interface	
WiFi Interface	
Bridge Interface	
Analog Modem Interface	
Static Routes tab	
Hosts tab	
DHCP Server tab	
Network Switch Configuration	
Switch Interfaces	
VLAN Configuration	
ACL	
Untagged/Access Ports	
Tagged/Trunk Ports	
Backplane Ports	
SSL VPN tab	
VPN SSL	
IPsec tab	

Overview	
IPsec Configuration Process	
Tunnel sub-tab	
IKE Profile sub-tab	
Global sub-tab	
Flow Exporter tab	
Add a new flow export:	
QoS tab	
Interfaces sub-tab	
Classes sub-tab	
Rules sub-tab	
Managed Devices Section	
General Information	
Supported Protocols	
Device Types	
Devices tab	
Configure Serial Connections	
Service Processor Devices	
Device Management with SSH	
Third-Party Console Servers	
KVM Switches	
Rack PDUs	
Cisco UCS	
Netapp	
Infrabox	
Virtual Machines	
Configure Auto Discovery of VMware Virtual Machine	
Device Management	
Authenticate with SSH Keys	
Auto-Discovery	
Auto Discovery of Console Server and KVM Switch Ports	
Auto Discovery of Network Devices	
Auto Discovery of Virtual Machines	
Auto Discovery of DHCP Clients	
Configure Individual Device Settings	
Hostname Detection	
Create a Probe or Match	
Multi sessions	
Break Signal	
Escape Sequences	
Disable User Authentication	
SSH / Telnet Port	
Binary Socket	
IP Aliases	
Location	
Device Web URL Options	
Assign Icon to Device	
Device Mode	
Device Expiration	
Device State Detection	
Triggered Custom Scripts on Device Status Change	
Data Logging	
Event Logging	
Triggered Alert Strings and Custom Scripts	
Custom Fields	

Commands and Custom Commands	
Console-like Access	
Views tab	
Preferences tab	
Power Menu sub-tab	
Session Preferences sub-tab	
Views sub-tab	
Cluster Section	
Peers tab	
Cluster Settings tab	
Enable Cluster	
Automatic Enrollment	
License Pool	
Peer Management	
Downgrading	
Security Section	
Local Accounts tab	
Manage Local Users	
Hash Format Password	
API Keys	
Password Rules tab	
Authorization tab	
Manage Groups	
Group Permissions	
External Authentication Provider	
SSH Key Authorization	
Authentication tab	
Add a server	
SSO (Single Sign-On)	
LDAP and Active Directory	
TACACS +	
RADIUS	
Kerberos	
RSA SecurID, 2-factor authentication	
Firewall tab	
NAT tab	
Services tab	
Intrusion Prevention	
ZPE Cloud	
Active Services	
Managed Devices Configuration	
Intrusion Prevention Configuration	
SSH Settings	
Web Service Settings	
Cryptographic Protocols Settings	
Auditing Section	
Event tab	
Categories sub-tab	
Settings tab	
Events tab	
Destinations	
Monitoring Section	
Monitoring Templates	
SNMP Template	
IPMI Discovery Template	

USB Sensors	278
KVM Dongle	278
Bluetooth	278
VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol)	279
Dashboard Section	
Data Point Exploration	
Create a Visualization	281
Line Charts	
Area Charts	
Create a Dashboard	
Inspect a Dashboard	290
Applications Section	
Docker Applications	
Docker Images	
Docker Containers	294
Application Links	294
Network Function Virtualization	295
Appendix A – General Information	295
Technical Support	
Support Ticket	
Updates and Patches	296
Virtual Serial Port (vSPC) on VM Servers	296
Serial Port Pinout	298
Safety	299
Quick Install Guide	
RoHS	
Data Persistence	
Remove Data from Nonvolatile Memory	
Soft Removal of User Data from Nonvolatile Memory	301
Hard Removal - Secure Erase	



## About the Nodegrid v5.0 User Guide

Document updated: July 13, 2022.

All manuals (<u>PDF or HTML format</u>) are available here.

If any features/functions cannot be viewed, user does not have necessary privileges.

This document provides user information and details on the Nodegrid Platform and the supporting units:

- Nodegrid Serial Console Series
- Nodegrid Net Services Router
- Nodegrid Gate SR
- Nodegrid Bold SR
- Nodegrid Link SR

## **Notifications**

#### USA

**WARNING:** Changes or modifications to this unit not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his/her own expense.

#### Canada

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

#### **European Union**

This is a class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.



**IMPORTANT:** All other marks are the property of their respective owners. This document may contain confidential and/or proprietary information of ZPE Systems, Inc., and its receipt or possession does not convey any right to reproduce, disclose its contents, or to manufacture or sell anything that it may describe. Reproduction, disclosure, or use without specific authorization from ZPE Systems, Inc. is strictly prohibited.

## **Credits**

ZPE Systems, the ZPE logo, Nodegrid Manager, Nodegrid, FireTrail, Cloud Clustering, DeviceURL and NodelQ are either registered trademarks or trademarks of ZPE Systems. Other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.

#### Contact us

Sales: <a href="mailto:sales@zpesystems.com">sales@zpesystems.com</a>

Support: <a href="mailto:support@zpesystems.com">support@zpesystems.com</a>

ZPE Systems, Inc. 3793 Spinnaker Court Fremont, CA 94538 USA

www.zpesystems.com

## **Product Overview**

## **Nodegrid Serial Console**

The Nodegrid Serial Console product line consolidates and manages attached devices via a Serial Port Connection including servers, network routers and switches, storage, PDUs, UPSs, and any other device with a serial port.

#### **Nodegrid Serial Console - S Series**

The Nodegrid Serial Console (S Series) is designed to fit modern and legacy mixed environment. With auto-sensing ports, the S Series Console Servers can be used within any environment with straight-through cables or legacy adapters.

Features include:

- Auto-Switching (Cisco or Legacy Pin-out)
- 16/32/48/96 Serial Ports
- Additional USB ports



- Factory upgradeable CPU and RAM
- 1U 19" Rack Standard Unit
- Single AC, Dual AC, and Dual DC
- Fan options

#### **Nodegrid Serial Console - S Series Hardware Specifications**

Item	Description
CPU	Intel x86_64 dual core CPU
Memory & Storage	4 GB of DDR3 DRAM 32 GB mSATA SSD
Interfaces	<ul> <li>16, 32, 48, 96 RS-232 serial ports on RJ45 @ 230,400 bps max/port</li> <li>2 Gb (10/100/1000BT) Ethernet interfaces on RJ45 or (optional) 2 SFP+ 1/2.5/10GB compatible</li> <li>1 RS-232 serial console port on RJ45</li> <li>1 USB 3.0 Host and 2 USB 2.0 Hosts on Type A connector</li> <li>1 HDMI output port</li> </ul>
Power	40V-63 VDC dual power input (redundant) Power consumption 45 W typical Single or Dual AC: 100-240 VAC, 50/60 Hz
Physical	Front-Rear mounting brackets Size (L x W x H): 443 x 312 x 43 mm (17.4 x 12.3 x 1.7 in), 1U Weight: 4.9 kg (10.8 lb), depending on options Shipping weight: 7.65 kg (17 lb) Shipping (L x W x H): 600 x 440 x 210 mm (23.6 x 17.3 x 8.3 in) F: front-to-back or back-to-front fans (Swappable) B: no fans
Environmental	Operation: 0 to 50° C (32 to 122° F), 5-95% RH, non-cond. Storage: -20 to 67° C (-4 to 153° F), 5-95% RH, non-cond.

#### Nodegrid Serial Console - S Series Front Interfaces (F: with fan)





#### Nodegrid Serial Console - S Series Front Interfaces (B: without fan)



Port	Description
HDMI	HDMI Interface
USB	USB 2.0 Port
PWR	Power LED Green: Solid - normal, Off - power is off
SYS	System LED Green: Blinking – normal, Fast Blink - RST button Acknowledgment, Off or Solid - no activity
RST	Reset button: <3s system reset,>10s configuration factory reset and system reset
FAN	Fan options: F (with fan), B (without fan)
USB	1 USB 2.0 Port, 12 USB 1.1 Ports

#### **Nodegrid Serial Console - S Series Rear Interfaces**



Port	Description
Power	Single or Dual Power Sockets
Serial	Serial Interfaces: Right/Orange DCD/DTR – On (port open and/or cable connected), Off (not ready) Left/Green RX/T- Blinking (data activity), Off (no activity)



Port	Description
ETH0/SFP0	Network Interface Copper:-Left/Green: Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected Ethernet fault:- Right/Green (1000Base-T link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed). Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) SFP 1Gb/10Gb:-Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green - 10Gb link speed:-Right/Orange (1Gb link speed),Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)
ETH1/SFP1	Network Interface Copper:-Left/Green: Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000Base-T link speed),·Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed),·Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) SFP 1Gb/10Gb:-Left/Green: Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (10Gb link speed),·Right/Orange (1Gb link speed),·Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)
Console	Console MGMT Interface Right/Orange (LED Power Failure), Blinking:(Power supply failure/off – for dual power supply models), Off (normal) Left/Green LED System Activity: Blinking (normal), Off or Solid (no activity)
USB	1 USB 3.0

#### Nodegrid Serial Console - R Series

The NODEGRID SERIAL CONSOLE (R Series) is made to fit into major hardware environments like Cisco, Arista, Dell, Palo Alto Networks, and Juniper. R Series Serial Consoles are perfect for retrofits and to upgrade Rack Standards of existing builds.

Features include:

- For Cisco Pin-out Devices
- 16/32/48/96 Serial Ports
- 1U 19" Rack Standard Unit
- Single AC, Dual AC, and Dual DC

#### Nodegrid Serial Console - R Series Hardware Specifications

ltem	Description
CPU	Intel Atom x86_64 dual core @ 1.75 GHz CPU
Memory & Storage	4 GB of DDR3 DRAM 32 GB mSATA SSD



Item	Description
Interfaces	<ul> <li>16, 32, 48, 96 RS-232 serial ports on RJ45 @ 230,400 bps max/port.</li> <li>2 Gigabit (10/100/1000BT) Ethernet interfaces on RJ45 or optionally 2 SFP+ 1/2.5/10GB compatible</li> <li>1 RS-232 serial console port on RJ45</li> <li>1 USB 3.0 Host and 2 USB 2.0 Hosts on Type A connector</li> <li>1 HDMI output port</li> </ul>
Power	40V-63 VDC dual power input (redundant) Power consumption 45 W typical Single or Dual AC: 100-240 VAC, 50/60 Hz
Physical	Front-Rear mounting brackets Size (L x W x H): 443 x 312 x 43 mm (17.4 x 12.3 x 1.7 in), 1U Weight: 4.9 kg (10.8 lb), depending on options Shipping weight: 9.5 kg (20.9 lb) Shipping (L x W x H): 600 x 440 x 210 mm (23.6 x 17.3 x 8.3 in)
Environmental	Operation: 0 to 50° C (32 to 122° F), 5-95% RH, non-cond. Storage: -20 to 67° C (-4 to 153° F), 5-95% RH, non-cond.

#### Nodegrid Serial Console - R Series Front Interfaces



Port	Description	
HDMI	HDMI Interface	
USB	2 USB 2.0 Port	
PWR	Power LED Green: Solid - normal, Off - power is off	
SYS	System LED Green: Blinking - normal Fast Blink - RST button Acknowledgment Off or Solid - no activity	
RST	Reset button:<3s system reset,>10s configuration factory reset and system reset	

#### Nodegrid Serial Console - R Series Rear Interfaces





Port	Description	
Power	Single or Dual Power Sockets	
Serial	Serial Interfaces: Right/Orange DCD/DTR – On (port open and/or cable connected), Off (not ready) Left/Green RX/T- Blinking (data activity), Off (no activity)	
ETH0/SFP0	Network Interface Copper:·Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) SFP 1Gb/10Gb:·Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (10Gb link speed),·Right/Orange (1Gb link speed),·Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)	
ETH1/SFP1	Network Interface Copper:·Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off:(no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) SFP 1Gb/10Gb:·Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (10Gb link speed), Right/Orange (1Gb link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)	
Console	Console MGMT Interface Right/Orange (LED Power Failure), Blinking (Power supply failure/off - for dual power supply models), Off (normal) Left/Green (LED System Activity) – Blinking (normal), Off or Solid (no activity)	
USB	USB 3.0	

#### **Nodegrid Serial Console - T Series**

The NODEGRID SERIAL CONSOLE (T Series) is made to fit into environments which are still utilizing legacy devices and can be a direct replacement for any legacy console server.

Features include:

- For Legacy Devices
- 16/32/48/96 Serial Ports
- 1U 19" Standard Unit
- Single AC, Dual AC, and Dual DC

#### Nodegrid Serial Console - T Series Hardware Specifications

Item	Description	
CPU	Intel Atom x86_64 dual core @ 1.75 GHz CPU	



ltem	Description
Memory & Storage	4 GB of DDR3 DRAM 32 GB mSATA SSD
Interfaces	2 Gigabit (10/100/1000BT) Ethernet interfaces on RJ45 or 2 SFP+ Fiber interfaces compatible with 1Gb 2.5Gb / 10Gb modules16, 32, 48, 96 RS-232 serial ports on RJ45 @ 230,400 bps max/port 1 RS-232 serial console port on RJ45 1 USB 3.0 Host 2 USB 2.0 Hosts on Type A connector HDMI
Power	Single/Dual AC 100-240 VAC, 50/60 Hz Dual DC: 40-63 VDC Power consumption 45 W (on 96 ports)
Physical	Front-Rear mounting brackets Size (L x W x H): 443 x 312 x 43 mm (17.4 x 12.3 x 1.7 in), 1U Weight: 4.9 kg (10.8 lb), depending on options Shipping weight: 9.5 kg (20.9 lb) Shipping (L x W x H): 600 x 440 x 210 mm (23.6 x 17.3 x 8.3 in)
Environmental	Operation: 0 to 50° C (32 to 122° F), 5-95% RH, non-cond. Storage: -20 to 67° C (-4 to 153° F), 5-95% RH, non-cond.

#### Nodegrid Serial Console - T Series Front Interfaces



Port	Description	
HDMI	HDMI Interface	
USB	2 USB 2.0 Port	
PWR	Power LED Green: Solid - normal, Off - power is off	
SYS	System LED Green: Blinking - normal Fast Blink - RST button Acknowledgment Off or Solid - no activity	
RST	Reset button:<3s system reset,>10s configuration factory reset and system reset	
HDMI	HDMI Interface	



#### **Nodegrid Serial Console - T Series Rear Interfaces**



Port	Description	
Power	Single or Dual Power Sockets	
Serial	Serial Interfaces: Right/Orange DCD/DTR – On (port open and/or cable connected), Off (not ready) Left/Green RX/T- Blinking (data activity), Off (no activity)	
ETH0/SFP0	Network Interface Copper:·Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) SFP 1Gb/10Gb:·Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (10Gb link speed),·Right/Orange (1Gb link speed),·Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)	
ETH1/SFP1	Network Interface Copper:·Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off:(no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) SFP 1Gb/10Gb:·Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (10Gb link speed), Right/Orange (1Gb link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)	
Console	Console MGMT Interface Right/Orange (LED Power Failure), Blinking (Power supply failure/off - for dual power supply models), Off (normal) Left/Green (LED System Activity) – Blinking (normal), Off or Solid (no activity)	
USB	USB 3.0	

## **Nodegrid Services Router Family**

The Nodegrid Services Router is a platform appliance designed for software-defined networking (SDN), out of band (OOB) management, DevOps, cellular failover, docker, SD-WAN, remote/branch offices, retail locations, and network function virtualization (NFV) capabilities.

## ))(t zpe

#### **Nodegrid Services Router**

The NODEGRID SERVICES ROUTER is a modular, open platform appliance designed for softwaredefined networking (SDN), out of band (OOB) management, DevOps, cellular failover, docker, SD-WAN, remote/branch offices, retail locations, and network function virtualization (NFV) capabilities.

Features include:

- Open Framework, Modular Services Router
- Pluggable Expansion Modules 5 slots available
- Modules for GbE, Serial, SFP+ 10GbE, PoE+, USB, M.2/SATA + Antenna, Storage, Extra Compute
- 1U 19" Standard Unit
- Separation of Control Plane and Data Plane

#### Nodegrid Net Services Router Hardware Specifications

ltem	Description	
CPU	Intel Multi-core x86_64 CPU	
Memory & Storage	8 GB of DDR4 DRAM (Upgradeable) 32 GB FLASH (mSATA SSD) (Upgradeable) Self-Encrypted Drive (SED)	
Interfaces	2 SFP+ Ethernet 2 Gigabit Ethernet 1 RS-232 serial console port on RJ45 1 USB 3.0 1 USB 2.0 1 HDMI	
Power	Dual AC 100-240 VAC, 50/60 Hz or Dual DC 36-75 VDC Power Consumption 90W-150W typical	
Physical	Front-Rear mounting brackets Size (L x W x H): 438 x 332 x 43mm (17.2 x 13.1 x 1.7 in), 1U Weight: 4.9 kg (10.8 lb), depending on options Air Exhaust or Air Intake Fans (Swappable)	
Environmental	Operation: 0 to 45° C (32 to 113° F), 5-95% RH, non-cond. Storage: -20 to 67° C (-4 to 153° F), 10-90% RH, non-cond.	



#### **Nodegrid Net Services Router Front Interfaces**



Port	Description	
Slot 1	Slot for Module	
Slot 2	Slot for Module	
Slot 3	Slot for Module	
SFP+ 0	Network Interface- Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (10Gb link speed), Right/Orange (1Gb link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)	
SFP+ 1	Network Interface- Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (10Gb link speed), Right/Orange (1Gb link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)	
ЕТНО	Network Interface- Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)	
ETH1	Network Interface- Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)	
Console	Console MGMT Interface Right/Orange (LED Power Failure), Blinking (Power supply failure/off for dual power supply models), Off (normal) Left/Green (LED System Activity), Blinking (normal), Off or Solid (no activity)	
USB	USB 3.0	
RST	Reset button: <3s (system reset) >10s (configuration factory reset and system reset)	

#### **Nodegrid Net Services Router Rear Interfaces**



Port	Description	
Slot 4	Slot for Module (depending on the Model)	
Slot 5	Slot for Module (depending on the Model)	
USB	2 USB 2.0 Port	
НДМІ	HDMI Interface	
PWR	Power LED Green: Solid - normal, Off - power is off	
SYS	System LED Green: Blinking - normal Fast Blink - RST button Acknowledgment Off or Solid - no activity	
FAN	Fan's	
Power Socket	Dual Power Sockets	
Power	Single or Dual Power Sockets	

#### **Nodegrid Services Router Expansion Modules**

The Nodegrid Services Router has up to five slots for modules that provide extreme flexibility and expanded functionality.

#### Nodegrid Net Services Router Expansion Modules

Module	Image	Specification
16-Port 1GbE	1.42 3 5.48 7.45 1.415 1.412 9.14 1.848	1000BASE-T Cat5e or better
16-Port SFP 1GbE		Supports all SFP Modules



Module	Image	Specification
8-Port SFP+ 10GbE		Supports all SFP+ Modules
8-Port PoE+	102 304 2015 701 102 304 2015 701 104 104 104 104 104 104	25.5W mapower per port Total ma150W PoE+ available Configurable power budget
16-Port Serial	102 30 0 001 101 000 000 0 1000 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	RJ45 Serial Rolled port ma230,400 bps
16-Port USB		USB 2.0 interfaces Type A
M.2 Cellular + Antenna		For up to 24G/LTE modems
M.2 SATA		For up to 2mSATA storage modules
Storage	Zpe stoward	For 2.5" SATA (HDD/SDD) storage
Compute		Compute module (server on a card), provides independent compute capabilities.

#### Expansion Module Compatibility Chart

Expansion card	Slot 1	Slot 2	Slot 3	Slot 4	Slot 5
16-Port GbE Ethernet	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	Secure Isolated Mode **	Secure Isolated Mode **
16-Port SFP	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	Secure Isolated Mode **	Secure Isolated Mode **
16-Port Serial	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
16-Port USB	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
M.2 Cellular / WiFi	~	~	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$



Expansion card	Slot 1	Slot 2	Slot 3	Slot 4	Slot 5
8-Port SFP+	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	Secure Isolated Mode **	Secure Isolated Mode **
8-Port POE+	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	_
Compute	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	Secure Isolated Mode **	Secure Isolated Mode **
Storage *	_	_	_	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
M.2 SATA *	_	_	_	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$

#### NOTES:

(\*) The Nodegrid Net Services Router supports a maximum of 2 SATA drives, which can be divided into 2 Storage cards or in one M.2 SATA card.

(\*\*) The Secure Isolated Mode allows for the management of the cards as if they would be located in a normal Slot, but the network traffic is isolated from any other slot.

#### **Configure Extra Storage Devices on NSR**

**IMPORTANT**: When additional storage is added, special steps are required to allow the system to see more than one disk (i.e. use both storage and an LTE/M2.SATA module).

If using Storage and LTE/M2.SATA:

- 1. The LTE/M2.SATA must be installed in slot 4.
- 2. The Storage module must be installed in slot 5.
- 3. The M2.SATA must be installed in Channel A.
- 4. The Modem must be installed in Channel B.
- 5. In the Web Interface, go to System :: Slots :: 5 and select Allow SATA card in slot 5 checkbox.

System :: Slots :: 5	
Save	
Slot Number:	5
Card SKU:	Empty
Card Type:	Empty
Allow SATA card in slot 5	

#### **Nodegrid Gate SR**

The Nodegrid Gate SR brings agility to any network. Perfect for both the data center and branch, Nodegrid Gate SR packs tremendous power in a small form factor, resulting in a truly robust and



dynamic, secure infrastructure management solution. Configuration and management of the Nodegrid Gate SR is simple via the ZPE Cloud.



Features include:

- Secure, fast, and consistent deployments across all your branches with ZPE Cloud
- Software Defined Networking, Network Function Virtualization, Guest OS, Kubernetes, and Docker capabilities
- Minimizes MTTR, downtime and expenses with secure, centralized remote device access & control
- Increases site reliability with open industry standard hardware and easy-to-use software
- Zero Touch Provisioning (ZTP) for fast and easy setup in remote locations
- Integrates with ZPE Cloud and ZPE Systems Nodegrid Manager for a vendor-neutral, unified management solution
- Direct Linux shell, HTML5 cross-device web access, and command line interface
- Modern 64-bit Linux Kernel for fast security patching and widespread software availability
- Kubernetes and Docker-optimized for quick, flexible script and application integration
- Extended Automation based on actionable real-time data
- Failover to 4G/LTE modem
- Gateway and multi-routing table capability
- VPN and IPsec
- DHCP server extra IPs for your remote site or replace your current router altogether

• Firewall – built-in and turns on with a check box

• Secure – selectable encrypted cryptographic protocols and cipher suite levels, and a configuration checksum™

• Power control and monitoring – get alerts on suboptimal IT device health before malfunctions occur and solve problems automatically

- Orchestration Puppet, Chef, Ansible, RESTful and ZPE Cloud
- WiFi hotspot ready via internal card or add your AP (Access Point) via a PoE+ port
- High density and flexible interfaces for greater connectivity

Item	Description
CPU	Intel Multi-core x86_64 CPU
Memory & Storage	8-32GB DDR4 DRAM 32GB Hardware encrypted SSD
Interfaces	<ul> <li>8 RJ45 Serial ports</li> <li>2 SFP+ (10G)</li> <li>1 Gigabit (10/100/1000BT) Ethernet interfaces on RJ45</li> <li>4 Gigabit (10/100/1000BT) Ethernet interfaces on RJ45 with Built-in Switch</li> <li>4 PoE+ Gigabit (10/100/1000BT) Ethernet interfaces on RJ45 with Built-in Switch</li> <li>2 GPIO (Digital I/O TTL level 5.5V max @ 64mA)</li> <li>1 Digital Out Port (Signal MOSFET Digital Output 2.5V to 60V @ 500mA max)</li> <li>1 Relay Port (NC relay contact max 24V @ 1A)</li> <li>2 USB 3.0 Host on Type A</li> <li>2 USB 2.0 Hosts on Type A</li> <li>1 Wi-Fi - optional</li> <li>2 Cellular Slots with Dual SIM - Optional</li> <li>1 HDMI port</li> </ul>
Power	36V-75 VDC dual power input (redundant) Power consumption 45 W typical AC Power adapter (add-on), 100-240V~, 1.2A, 50-60Hz (operating temperature: -25C – 60C
Physical	Front-Rear mounting brackets Size (L W H): 241.3 260.4 44.5 mm (9.5 10.25 1.75 in) Weight: .9 kg (2 lb) Shipping weight: 3.6 kg (8.0 lb) Shipping (L W H): 349.2 374.7 177.8 mm (13.75 14.75 7 in)
Environmental	Operation: 0 to 60° C (32 to 140° F), 5-95% RH, non-cond. Storage: -20 to 67° C (-4 to 153° F), 5-95% RH, non-cond.

#### **Nodegrid Gate SR Hardware Specifications**

#### Nodegrid Gate SR Front Interfaces



Interface	Description
DIO0	Digital I/O TTL level 5.5V ma@ 64mA
DIO1	Digital I/O TTL level 5.5V ma@ 64mA
OUTO	Signal MOSFET Digital Output 2.5V to 60V @ 500mA max
Relay Output	NC relay contact ma24V @ 1A
Console	Console MGMT Interface
USB	2 USB 2.0
HDMI	Monitor Interface
Channel A	Signal Strength indicator for Channel A
Channel B	Signal Strength indicator for Channel B
PWR	Power LED Green: Solid - normal Off - power is off
SYS	System LED Green: Blinking - normal Fast Blink - RST button Acknowledgment Off or Solid - no activity
RST	Reset button:<3s system reset>10s reset to factory default and system reset
Power Switch	Power on/off Switch



#### Nodegrid Gate SR Rear Interfaces



Port	Description
PWR	Power LED Green: Solid - normal Off - power is off
V2- / GND / V2+	Power Connector for External Power Supply 36V - 75VDC dual power input (redundant)
V1- / GND / V1+	Power Connector for External Power Supply 36V - 75VDC dual power input (redundant)
PoE+	4 PoE+ Network Interface numbered 1 to 4- Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)
NET	4 Network Interface numbered 5 to 8 Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)
SFP+0	SFP+ Network Interface 0 Left/Yellow – Solid (Link UP), Off (no link/cable disconnected)- Right/Green – Solid (Link UP), Blinking (Activity), Off (no link/cable disconnected)
SFP+ 1	SFP+ Network Interface 1. Left/Yellow – Solid (Link UP), Off (no link/cable disconnected). Right/Green – Solid (Link UP), Blinking (Activity), Off (no link/cable disconnected)
ЕТНО	Network Interface- Left/Yellow – Solid (Link UP), Blinking (data activity), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ehternet fault)- Right/Green – Solid (1000BaseT link speed), Off (100/10BaseT link speed or off)
USB	2 USB 3.0 Port
Serial	Serial Interfaces 1-8- Right/Orange DCD/DTR – On )port open and/or cable connected), Off (not ready) Left/Green RX/T- Blinking (data activity), Off (no activity)



#### **Nodegrid Bold SR**

The Nodegrid Bold SR is an open platform appliance designed for secure access and control over remote and IoT devices at the EDGE of your network. The Bold SR supports cellular failover, Network Function Virtualization (NFV), and Software Defined Networking with a focus on SD-WAN.



Features include:

- 1U high, compact size, high processing power
- Ideal for Software Defined Networking
- Network Function Virtualization
- Cellular failover
- WiFi hotspot & client
- Multiple Interfaces

#### Nodegrid Bold SR Hardware Specifications

Item	Description
CPU	Intel Multi-core x86_64 CPU
Memory & Storage	4 GB of DDR3 DRAM 32 GB SATADOM SSD (Upgradeable)





Item	Description
Interfaces	<ul> <li>8 RJ45 Serial ports</li> <li>1 Gigabit (10/100/1000BT) Ethernet interfaces on RJ45</li> <li>4 Gigabit (10/100/1000BT) Ethernet interfaces on RJ45 with Built-in Switch</li> <li>2 USB 3.0 Host on Type A</li> <li>2 USB 2.0 Hosts on Type A</li> <li>1 Wi-Fi and Bluetooth Slot (Optional)</li> <li>2 Cellular CAT-12 Slots with Dual SIM - Optional</li> <li>1 VGA port</li> </ul>
Power	12VDC via external 100-240 VAC, 50/60 Hz adapter Power consumption 25 W typical
Physical	Front-Rear mounting brackets Size (L x W x H): 142 x 201 x 44 mm (5.5 x 7.9 x 1.73 in) Weight: 1.2 kg (2.6 lb) Shipping weight: 2.3 kg (5.0 lb) Shipping (L x W x H): 313 x 313 x 140 mm (12.3 x 12.3 x 5.5 in)

#### Nodegrid Bold SR Front Interfaces

9				)(ژ zpe	NODEGRIB SR	0
					- 0	
00000	• • •		• •			
CHANNEL A	CHANNEL B	CONSOLE	SYS PWR		RST	_

Port	Description
Channel A	Signal Strength indicator for Channel A
Channel B	Signal Strength indicator for Channel B
Console	Console MGMT Interface
PWR	Power LED Green: Solid - normal, Off - power is off
SYS	System LED Green: Blinking - normal Fast Blink - RST button Acknowledgment Off or Solid - no activity
RST	Reset button:<3s system reset,>10s configuration factory reset and system reset



Port	Description
Power Switch	Power on/off Switch

#### Nodegrid Bold SR Rear View



Port	Description
PWR IN	Power Socket for external Power Supply
Monitor	VGA Interface
ETHO	Network Interface Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)
USB	2 USB 2.0 Port 2 USB 3.0 Port
ETH1	Network Interface(NET) Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)
ETH2	Network Interface(NET) Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)
ЕТНЗ	Network Interface(NET) Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)



Port	Description				
ETH4	Network Interface(NET)· Left/Green – Blinking (data activity), Solid (ready), Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault) Right/Green (1000BaseT link speed), Right/Orange (100BaseT link speed), Right/Off (no link/cable disconnected/Ethernet fault)				
Serial	Serial Interfaces 1-8 Right/Orange DCD/DTR – On (port open and/or cable connected), Off (not ready) Left/Green RX/T – Blinking (data activity), Off (no activity)				

## **Nodegrid Link SR**

The Nodegrid Link SR brings agility to the branch network, packing tremendous power in a compact design. Truly robust and dynamic, secure infrastructure management – Configure and manage Link SR via the ZPE Cloud to get your Branch / IoT / M2M / Kiosk / ATM / Remote Locations up and running quickly and easily.



Features include:

- Secure, fast and consistent deployments across your branches with the ZPE Cloud
- Combines Cellular gateway and WiFi Access Point (AP) with power input via PoE or Power Adapter

# ))( zpe

- Software Defined Networking, Network Function Virtualization, Guest OS, Kubernetes, and Docker capabilities
- Minimizes MTTR, downtime and expenses with secure, centralized remote device access & control
- Increases site reliability with open industry standard hardware, and easy-to-use software
- Zero Touch Provisioning (ZTP) for fast and easy setup in remote locations
- Integrates with ZPE Cloud and ZPE Systems Nodegrid Manager vendor-neutral, unified management solution
- Direct Linushell, HTML5 cross-device web access and command line interface
- Modern 64-bit LinuKernel for fast security patching and widespread software availability
- Kubernetes and Docker-optimized for quick, flexible script and application integration
- Extended Automation based on actionable real-time data
- Failover to 4G/LTE modem
- Linkway and multi-routing table capability
- VPN and IPsec
- DHCP server extra IPs for your remote site or replace your current router altogether
- Firewall built-in and turns on with a checkbox
- Secure selectable encrypted cryptographic protocols and cypher suite levels, configuration checksum™
- Power control and monitoring get alerts on suboptimal IT device health before malfunctions occur and solve problems automatically
- Orchestration Puppet, Chef, Ansible, RESTful and ZPE Cloud
- High density and flexible interfaces for greater connectivity

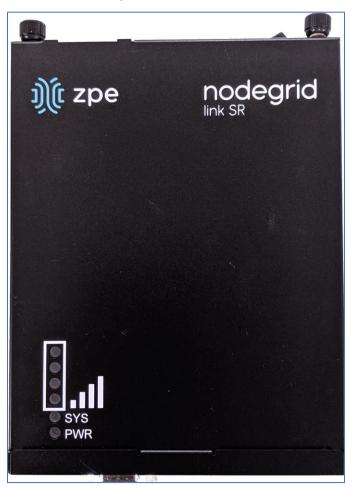
#### **Nodegrid Link SR Hardware Specifications**

Item	Description					
CPU	Intel Multi-core x86_64 CPU					
Memory & Storage	4-8GB of DDR3 DRAM 16GB Self Encrypted Disk (SED) 32 GB SATADOM SSD (Upgradeable)					



Item	Description
Interfaces	<ul> <li>1 RJ45 Serial ports</li> <li>1 SFP (1G)</li> <li>1 Gigabit (10/100/1000BT) Ethernet interfaces on RJ45 with PoE in</li> <li>2 GPIO Port (Digital I/O TTL level 5.5V max @ 64mA)</li> <li>2 Digital Out Port (Signal MOSFET Digital Output 2.5V to 60V @ 500mA max)</li> <li>2 USB 2.0 Hosts on Type A</li> <li>1 Wi-Fi – Optional</li> <li>1 Cellular Slots with Dual SIM – Optional</li> <li>1 VGA port</li> </ul>
Power	10V - 57VDC power input AC Power adapter (add-on) 100-240V~ 50-60Hz 1.5APoE power input Power consumption 15 W typical
Physical	DIM Rail and Wall Mountable Size (L W H): 170 130 55 mm (6.69 5.11 2.16 in) Weight: 1.58 kg (2.3 lb) Shipping weight: 1.58 kg (3.5 lb) Shipping (L W H): 228.6 342.9 88.9 mm (9 13.5 3.5 in)
Environmental	Operating: 0 to 60°C (32 to 140° F), 5-95% RH, non-cond. Storage: -20 to 67° C (-4 to 153° F), 10-90% RH, non-cond.

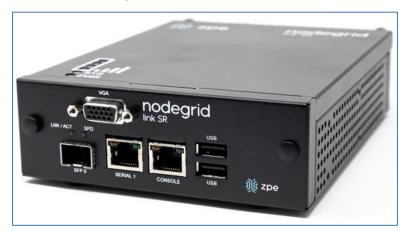
#### Nodegrid Link SR Top View



Designation	Description					
BARS	Signal Strength indicator					
PWR	Power LED Green: · Solid - normal · Off - power is off					
SYS	System LED Green: Blinking - normal Fast Blink - RST button Acknowledgment Off or Solid - no activity					



#### Nodegrid Link SR Front Interfaces



Designation	Description
SFP 0	SFP Network Interface 0 Left/Yellow – Blinking (data activity), Solid (link up), Off (no link/cable disconnected) Right/Green – Solid (1000BaseT link speed), Off (no link/cable disconnected)
Serial	Serial Interface 1- Right/Orange DCD/DTR – Solid (port open and/or cable connected), Off (not ready) Left/Green RX/T- Blinking (data activity), Off (no activity)
Console	Console MGMT Interface
USB	2 USB 2.0
VGA	Monitor Interface

#### Nodegrid Link SR Rear Interfaces



Item	Description
Power Switch	Power on/off Switch



Version 5.0

Item	Description					
V1- / GND / V1+	Power Connector for External Power Supply 10V - 57VDC power input					
ETHO	1 Gigabit (10/100/1000BT) Ethernet with PoE in Left/Yellow – Solid (link up), Blinking (data activity), Off (no link/cable) Right/Green - Solid:(1000BaseT link speed), Off (10/100BaseT link speed)					
DIO0	Digital I/O TTL level 5.5V ma @ 64mA					
DIO1	Digital I/O TTL level 5.5V ma @ 64mA					
OUTO	Signal MOSFET Digital Output 2.5V to 60V @ 500mA max					
OUT1	Signal MOSFET Digital Output 2.5V to 60V @ 500mA max					
RST	Reset button:<3s system reset>10s reset to factory default and system reset					

## **Nodegrid Manager**

The Nodegrid Manager provides a unified solution to control compute, network, storage, and smart power assets.

#### **Nodegrid Manager Hardware Requirements**

Item	Description					
CPU	Minimum: 2 Intel Multi-core x86_64 CPU					
Memory & Storage	4 GB RAM, minimum 32 GB HDD					
Interfaces	Minimum 1 Gigabit Ethernet interface					
Supported Hypervisors	VMware ESX LinuKVM Oracle Virtualbo LinuOS					

## Installation

## **Hardware Installation**

Please refer to the "Quick Install Guide provided with the unit in the box for quick instructions on how to start your box.



## **Shipping Box Contents**

#### Accessories

Model	Mounting brackets	Power cables	Loop-back adapter	Console adapter	Network cable	Quick start guide & safety sheet
Nodegrid Serial Console - T Series	Yes	Yes	Legacy	Z000036	Yes	Yes
Nodegrid Serial Console - R Series - TxxR	Yes	Yes	Cisco	Z000014	Yes	Yes
Nodegrid Serial Console - S Series - TxxS	Yes	Yes	Legacy/Cisco	Z000015Z0 00036	Yes	Yes
Nodegrid Net Services Router	Yes	Yes	Cisco	Z000014	Yes	Yes
Nodegrid Bold Services Router	Yes	External Power Supply	Cisco	Z000014	Yes	Yes
Nodegrid Link Services Router	No	Optional External Power Supply	Cisco	Z000014	Yes	Yes
Nodegrid Gate Services Router	Yes	Optional External Power Supply	Cisco	Z000014	Yes	Yes

Each unit is shipped with multiple accessories. The table below lists the contents of the box.

# ))(t zpe

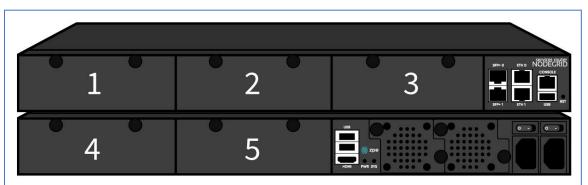
### Installation of Modules for Nodegrid Services Router

The Nodegrid Net Services Router supports a variety of different modules. All modules are not hotswappable and need to be installed before the unit is powered up. The modules should be installed in an ESD protected environment to avoid damage. To install a card, please follow the steps below:

- 1. Ensure that the Nodegrid Net Services Router is powered off.
- 2. Turn off the power supplies on the Nodegrid Net Services Router.
- 3. Unscrew the blanking panel which covers the slot in which the module should be installed.
- 4. Unbox the card and insert it into the appropriate slot.
- 5. Fix the card with the provided screws.
- 6. The Nodegrid Net Services Router can now be turned on.

**NOTE:** The blanking panel should be kept for later use. For thermal efficiency and safety, each unused slot needs to be covered with a blanking panel.

#### Module Compatibility Layout



#### Nodegrid Net Services Router Expansion Module Compatibility Chart

Expansion card	Slot 1	Slot 2	Slot 3	Slot 4	Slot 5
16-Port GbE Ethernet	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	Secure Isolated Mode **	Secure Isolated Mode **
16-Port SFP	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	Secure Isolated Mode **	Secure Isolated Mode **
16-Port Serial	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	1	$\checkmark$
16-Port USB	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	1	$\checkmark$
M.2 Cellular / WiFi	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	1	$\checkmark$
8-Port SFP+	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	Secure Isolated Mode **	Secure Isolated Mode **
8-Port POE+	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-
Compute	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	Secure Isolated Mode **	Secure Isolated Mode **



Expansion card	Slot 1	Slot 2	Slot 3	Slot 4	Slot 5
Storage *	_	_	_	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
M.2 SATA *	_	_	_	1	$\checkmark$

#### NOTES:

(\*) The Nodegrid Net Services Router supports a maximum of 2 SATA drives, which can be divided into 2 Storage cards or in one M.2 SATA card.

(\*\*) The Secure Isolated Mode allows for the management of the cards as if they would be located in a normal Slot, but the network traffic is isolated from any other slot.

## M.2 Cellular Antenna Placement

Correct antenna placement is critical to ensure proper functionality of the M.2 Cellular expansion card. Two antennas (main and auxiliary) are required for each car and they should be separated to improve signal quality.

## **Single Card configuration**

For single card applications, antenna placement is as follows:

#### Channel A

Main in slot 1

Auxiliary in slot 6

The A and B channel strength indicators do not directly correspond to the antenna slot positions (Slots 4-6 are not specifically reserved for channel B).

#### **Dual Card Configuration**

For dual card applications, four antennas (2 main and 2 auxiliary) will be used. Antenna placement is as follows:

#### Channel A

Main in slot 1

Auxiliary in slot 4

#### Channel B

Main in slot 3

Auxiliary in slot 6

## **Device Power Connections**

#### **DC Power**

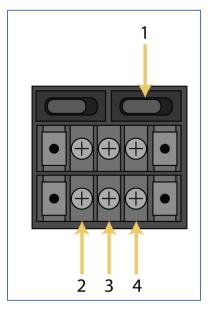
DC power is connected to DC-powered equipment with three wires: Return (RTN), Ground and 48 VDC.

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.

**WARNING:** It is critical that the power source supports the DC power requirements of your Nodegrid. Make sure that the power source is the correct type and that the DC power cables are in good condition before proceeding. Failure to do so could result in personal injury or damage to the equipment.

**WARNING:** Wiring to power from a DC supply may be confusing, especially in telecom racks, where the supply's positive wire (usually of red color) goes to the ground, and the hot wire (usually of black color) carries the -48VDC. In case of any doubt, consult a certified electric technician before proceeding with connections. Failure to do the right connections could result in personal injury or damage to the equipment.



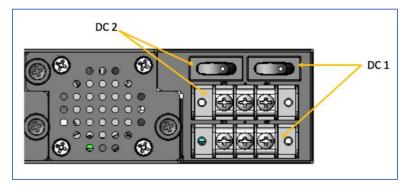


### **DC Power Block Terminals**

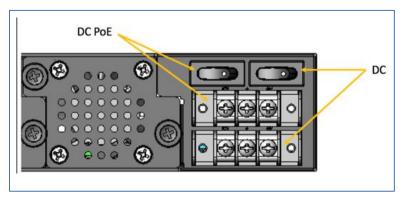
Number	Description
1	Power Switch
2	RTN (Return)
3	Ground
4	48 VDC



#### DC association - terminal power source and switch







## **Connect a Nodegrid device to DC Power**

- 1. Make sure the device is turned off.
- 2. Make sure DC power cables are **not** connected to a power source. **Never work on powered wires.**
- 3. On the DC power block, remove the protective cover. (Slide to the left or right to remove.)
- 4. Loosen all three DC power connection terminal screws.

Connect return lead to the RTN terminal.

Connect ground lead to the GND  $\ddagger$  terminal.

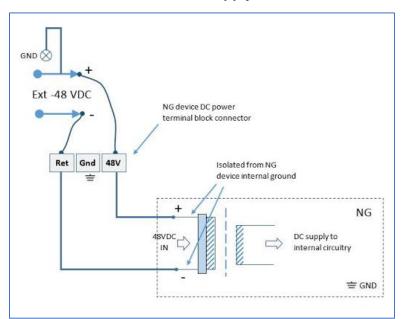
Connect 48 VDC lead to the 48 VDC terminal.

- 5. Tighten the screws.
- 6. Slide the DC terminal block protective cover back into place.
- 7. If device has dual-input DC terminals, repeat DC power connection steps for the second terminal block.
- 8. Connect the DC power cables to the DC power source.
- 9. Turn on the DC power source.
- 10. (optional) Connect a serial client (set as 115200 8N1) to the console port (Teraterm, puTTY, etc).

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.

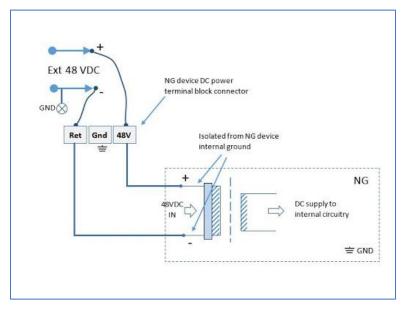
# ))(t zpe

- 11. Turn power on to the serial client.
- 12. On the connected serial client, double-check booting messages.
- 13. For the connected devices, turn on the power switches.
- 14. Connect the DC power cables to the DC power source.
- 15. Turn on the DC power source.
- 16. Turn on the unit.
- 17. Turn on the power switches of the connected devices.



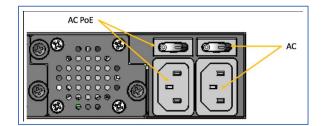
### -48VDC supply

+48VDC supply





This is the AC diagram for the NSR models with PoE+ support.



## Rack Mounting

All units shipped with rack mounting brackets can be mounted to fit a standard 19" rack. Two rack mounting brackets are provided in the box as outlined in the What is in the box section. The remainder of this document will refer to "rack or cabinet" as "rack".

Some units are actively cooled by fans. These units must be properly mounted into the rack to ensure that the fans blow into the correct direction. The fan direction can be determined from the part number of the unit.

Model	Part Number	Cooled	Airflow
Nodegrid Serial Console - T Series	NSC-Txx-xxxx-xxx	Passive	N/A
Nodegrid Serial Console - R Series	NSC-TxxR-xxxx-xxx	Passive	N/A
Nodegrid Serial Console - S Series	NSC-TxxS-xxxx- xxx-F	Active	Front-Back (air in)
Nodegrid Serial Console - S Series	NSC-TxxS-xxxx- xxx-B	Active	Back-Front (air out)
Nodegrid Net Services Router	NSR-xxxx-xxx	Active	Front-Back (air out)

## **Rack Mounting**



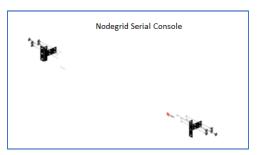
Model	Part Number	Cooled	Airflow
Nodegrid Net Services Router	NSR-xxxx-xxx	Active	Back-Front (air in)
Nodegrid Bold Services Router	BSR-xx-xxxx	Passive	N/A
Nodegrid Link Services Router	LSR-xx-xxxx	Passive	N/A
Nodegrid Gate Services Router	GSR-xx-BASE	Passive	N/A
Nodegrid Gate Services Router	GSR-xx-UPGx	Active	Front-Back (air out)

## **Rack Installation**

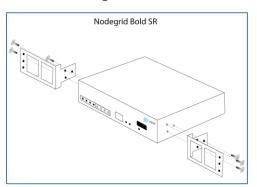
1. Install the rack mounting brackets with the provided screws as shown in the diagrams below



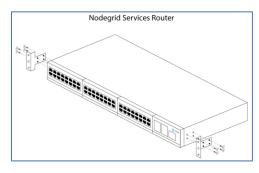
### Nodegrid Serial Console



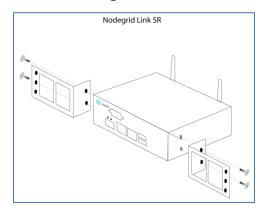
### **Nodegrid Bold SR**



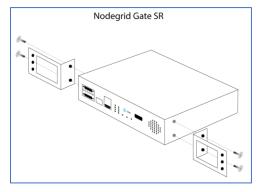
#### **Nodegrid Net Services Router**



#### **Nodegrid Link SR**



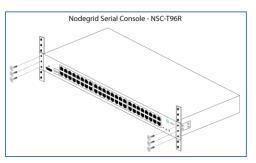
#### **Nodegrid Gate SR**



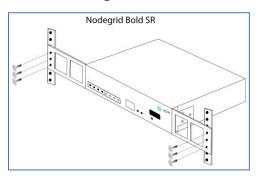
- 2. Locate the position on the rack where you would like to mount the unit and ensure the slot is clear of any obstructions.
- 3. Slide the unit into the rack and align the mounting bracket screw holes with the screw holes on the rack as shown below:



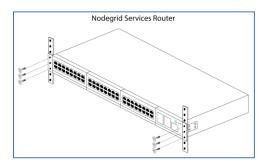
## Nodegrid Serial Console



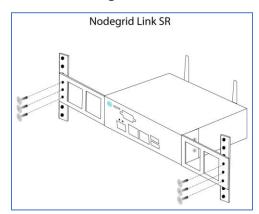
## **Nodegrid Bold SR**



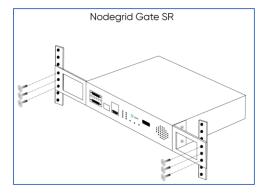
#### **Nodegrid Net Services Router**



### **Nodegrid Link SR**



#### **Nodegrid Gate SR**



- 4. While holding the unit in position, insert the rack mount screws (not included) and turn them clockwise until they are snug, but not tight.
- 5. Once all the screws are installed, check to ensure that the unit is supported and still in the correct position.
- 6. Tighten the screws securely to complete the installation.





## Network Connection

Depending on the model and version, the unit has a minimum of two copper Ethernet ports or two SFP+ ports. Connect the proper network cables (CAT5e, CAT6, CAT6A) from the network switch port to any available unit network ports. For models with SFP+ ports, before the unit is turned on, install the SFP+ module and connect the appropriate cables.

## **Power Cord(s) Connection**

The Nodegrid unit can have one or multiple power supplies (AC or DC). Connect all the power supplies with appropriate cables to an available power source (usually a Rack PDU. If the unit was shipped with one power supply, that unit has no power failure redundancy. Units with two power supplies provide redundancy against power failures. Make sure these power supplies are connected to two independent power sources.

**NOTE**: On the Nodegrid Net Services Router with PoE support, the second power supply specifically powers the PoE feature – and does not provide power outage redundancy.

When all power supplies are appropriately connected to a power source, power can be turned on. (See "DC Power" for information on the DC power supply ports).

## **Connect Target Devices**

## Serial Target Devices

**NOTE**: To avoid EMC issues, always use good quality network cable for all port connections.

The cabling and adapters needed between the unit serial ports and the serial devices' console port are determined by their pin-outs.

Newer serial devices (routers, switches, and servers) use either a DB9, RJ45 or USB port as console ports. See the manufacturer's manual fpr serial device port pin-out specs. Generally, the RJ45 console port uses the Cisco-like pin-out.

Model	Port type	Pin-out	Device port - RJ45 (Legacy)	Device port - RJ45 (cisco)	Device port - DB9	Device port - USB
Nodegrid Serial Console - T Series	RJ45	Legacy	CAT5e cable	CAT5e cable plus Z000039 crossover adapter	CAT5e cable plus Z000036 crossover adapter	USB
Nodegrid Serial Console - R Series	RJ45	Cisco	-	CAT5e cable	CAT5e cable plus Z000015 crossover adapter	USB
Nodegrid Serial Console - S Series	RJ45	Auto- Sensing (Legacy/C isco)	CAT5e cable	CAT5e cable	CAT5e cable plus Z000015 crossover adapter	USB

## **Required Cabling Ports/Pin-outs**



Model	Port type	Pin-out	Device port - RJ45 (Legacy)	Device port - RJ45 (cisco)	Device port - DB9	Device port - USB
Nodegrid Net Services Router	RJ45	Cisco	-	CAT5e cable	CAT5e cable plus Z000015 crossover adapter	USB
Nodegrid Bold Services Router	RJ45	Cisco	-	CAT5e cable	CAT5e cable plus Z000015 crossover adapter	USB
Nodegrid Link Services Router	RJ45	Cisco	-	CAT5e cable	CAT5e cable plus Z000015 crossover adapter	USB
Nodegrid Gate Services Router	RJ45	Cisco	-	CAT5e cable	CAT5e cable plus Z000015 crossover adapter	USB

If the serial device's RJ45 does not have the Cisco-like pin-out, or there is a question on connecting a serial device to the unit, contact <u>ZPE Systems Technical Support</u> for assistance.

## **IP Target Devices**

**NOTE**: To avoid EMC issues, always use good quality network cable for all port connections.

All IP based target devices are directly connected to a network interface on a Nodegrid unit, or connected through an existing network infrastructure. If the target devices are directly connected, use standard network cables (CAT 5, CAT6, CAT6e) for Ethernet connections, or an appropriate fiber cable.

## **Connect to a Nodegrid Device**

On the first connection to a Nodegrid device, the login prompt requires an immediate password change.





NOTE: On new devices, SSH is disabled by default.

## **Connect to the Console Port**

Use the provided CAT5e and RJ45-DB9 Z000036 adapter/cable to communicate with the Nodegrid unit.

- 1. Connect one end of the CAT5e cable to the Nodegrid console port.
- 2. Connect the other end to the RJ45-DB9 adapter.
- 3. Plug the adapter into the PC's DB9 COM port.

If no DB9 COM port, use a USB-DB9 adapter (not provided).

- 4. On the PC, use a serial application (Xterm, TeraTerm, PuTTY, SecureCRT) to open a terminal session to the COM port:
- 5. Set it to: 115200bps, 8 bits, no parity, 1 stop bit, no flow control settings.

NOTE: See system information to find the COM port.

## ETH0 Connection

By default, the ETH0 interface is configured to listen for DHCP requests. If no DHCP Server is available, the unit uses the default IP address: 192.168.160.10. Use a browser to access the unit: https://[DHCP ASSIGNED IP] or https://192.168.160.10. If needed, a SSH client can be an alternative access.

Setting	Value
DHCP	enabled
Fall-back IP	yes
Default IP	192.168.160.10/24
Default URL	https://192.168.160.10
Default SSH	SSH admin@192.168.160.10
DHCP	enabled

#### **Connection through ETH0**

## WiFi Connection

The Nodegrid device is pre-configured to act as a WiFi hotspot with a built-in WiFi module or a USB WiFi adapter. When turned on, the device automatically presents a WiFi network with the SSID = **Nodegrid**. The password is the device's serial number.

The Nodegrid device provides the IP address to clients in the network 192.168.162.0/24. The client can be configured statically with a valid IP address in the 192.168.162.<2-254> range, bitmask 24.



## **Bluetooth® Connection**

Zero Touch Provisioning (ZTP) via Bluetooth allows faster deployment, even when the network infrastructure is not in place. The only additional equipment needed is a smartphone or laptop with Bluetooth tethering enabled.

On Nodegrid devices configured with Bluetooth hardware, this is enabled by default. Bluetooth is enabled/disabled via the **Security** tab or **Network Settings**.

**NOTE**: For devices without Bluetooth, configure an adapter. Contact ZPE Support for the latest list of compatible adapters.

To connect via Bluetooth:

- 1. On your smartphone or laptop, enable tethering.
- 2. On the Bluetooth screen, locate and click on the new Nodegrid device.
- 3. Once paired, Nodegrid connects to the ZPE Cloud and automatically begins the ZTP process.

## **KVM Port Connection**

The Nodegrid unit can be directly configured with KVM.

1. Connect a HDMI cable to the monitor and the device's HDMI interface.

**NOTE**: The Nodegrid Bold SR uses a VGA port. If monitor only has HDMI, use a HDMI to DVI-D adapter to connect.

2. Connect a USB Keyboard and Mouse to the USB ports.

**NOTE**: The keyboard and mouse must support Linux. Windows-only devices are not supported. This limitation generally affects devices which use a USB wireless dongle.

3. The login prompt indicates the connection is active.

## I/O Ports (GPIO)

Nodegrid Gate SR supports two digital I/O ports (DIO0, DIO1), one digital output port (OUT0) and one relay port (1A@24V).

Nodegrid Link SR supports two digital I/O ports (DIO0, DIO1) and two digital output ports (OUT0, OUT1).

DIO0 and DIO1 can be independently configured as input or output. The DIO0 and DIO1 are opendrain digital I/O ports with TTL level (5.5V max @ 64mA). ESD protection exceeds JESD 22.

When DIO port is configured as input:

contact is open, senses High (1)

contact is closed, senses Low (0)

**NOTE**: DIO0 and DIO1 port configuration as input is ideal for dry contact applications (door close, vibration, water, smoke sensors).

When DIO port is configured as output:



set to high, outputs TTL high

set to low, outputs TTL low

NOTE: DIO0 and DIO1 port configuration as output can control low voltage/current applications.

The OUT0 and OUT1 are high voltage digital outputs. Each port is internally attached to a Signal MOSFET. The output port is normally open (NO) and capable of supporting a voltage range from 2.5V to 60V @ 500mA.

When OUT port is set to:

High (enabled/active and pulls OUT to ground)

Low (disabled/inactive and keeps OUT open)

NOTE: OUT0 and OUT1 can pull a power-connected line to ground (i.e., relay circuit).

On Nodegrid Gate SR, the RELAY port is normally a closed (NC) relay (rated max value of 24V @ 1A). The RELAY specification supports a maximum switching power of 60W, 125VA; maximum switching voltage of 220VDC, 250VAC; maximum switching current of 2A, with restive load.

The RELAY's primary function is a Power Source Control Alarm. When closed, it indicates that Nodegrid Gate SR is powered by a single power source or has no power. If the Nodegrid Gate SR is powered by both power input sources, when RELAY is closed, it indicates a FAILURE on at least one power input sources.

(Optional), RELAY can be changed to follow software control (Open / Close), to control an external device. Possible relay states are:

open (opens relay contact)

close (closes relay contact)

The I/O Port configuration is under *System :: I/O Ports*. I/O Port status and other hardware details is under *Tracking :: HW Monitor*.

WARNING! For Safety Reasons, do not exceed max voltage or current defined on each port.

## **Import / Export Configuration**

The CLI can import the entire (or partial) Nodegrid configuration.

## **Export Configuration Settings**

export\_settings [cli-path] [arguments]

where arguments can be:

--with-options (provide a list of choices for value)

--include-empty (generate parameter line even if no value)

--not-enabled (generate parameter line even if parameter not active)

--plain-password (plain/hash password)



--file <local-pathname> (output to a local file)

## Import Configuration Settings

import\_settings [arguments]

where arguments can be:

--file <local-pathname> (local file input)

--overwrite-tables (overwrite table when its configuration is given)

--quiet (suppress report of success/failure per path, just output final counters)

**NOTE**: In interactive mode (no --file given), the lines can be typed or copied/pasted. Enter **<ctrl>D** to finalize.

## **Nodegrid Manager Installation**

Install Nodegrid Manager from an ISO file. This is the three-step process:

- 1. Create a virtual machine.
- 2. To install, boot from the ISO file/CD.
- 3. Restart and boot from the new virtual machine.

#### Minimum Requirements:

- ESXi 4.1 or above
- 32 GB hard drive (connected through the LSI Logic Parallel Controller)
- 4 GB memory (8GB is recommended)
- 2 Network adapters (E1000 adapters are recommended)

## **Create a VMware Virtual Machine**

- 1. On the ESXi vSphere application, click Create a new virtual machine.
- 2. On the Create a new virtual machine dialog, click Next.

# j)(t zpe

1 New virtual machine - Nodegrid (ES	Xi 6.5 virtual machine)	
<ul> <li>New virtual machine - Nodegrid (ES)</li> <li>1 Solect creation type</li> <li>2 Select a name and guest OS</li> <li>3 Select storage</li> <li>4 Customize settings</li> <li>5 Ready to complete</li> </ul>	XI 6.5 virtual machine)  Select creation type How would you like to create a Virtual Machine?  Create a new virtual machine Deploy a virtual machine from an OVF or OVA file Register an existing virtual machine	This option guides you through creating a new virtual machine. You will be able to customize processors, memory, network connections, and storage. You will need to install a guest operating system after creation.
<b>vm</b> ware <sup>.</sup>		Back Next Finish Cancel

3. On Select a name and guest OS dialog:

🔁 New virtual machine - Nodegrid (ES	SXi 6.5 virtual machine)			
<ul> <li>1 Select creation type</li> <li>2 Select a name and guest OS</li> </ul>	Select a name and gu Specify a unique name and OS	uest OS		
3 Select storage 4 Customize settings 5 Ready to complete	Name			
	Nodegrid Virtual machine names can contai	n up to 80 characters and	they must be unique within ea	ch ESXi instance.
	Identifying the guest operating system the appropriate defaults for the op			
	Compatibility	ESXi 6.5 virtual machine	9	¥
	Guest OS family	Linux		¥
	Guest OS version	Other Linux (64-bit)		T
<b>vm</b> ware*				
			Back	Next Finish Cancel

Enter Name for the Nodegrid Manager virtual machine.

For Guest OS family, select Linux.

## For Guest OS version, select Other Linux (64-Bit).

#### Click Next.



4. On Select storage dialog table, select the virtual machine's data storage volume. Click Next.

😚 New virtual machine - Nodegrid (ES	Xi 6.5 virtual machine)							
<ul> <li>✓ 1 Select creation type</li> <li>✓ 2 Select a name and guest OS</li> <li>✓ 3 Select storage</li> </ul>	e and guest OS Select the datastore in which to store the configuration and disk files.							
4 Customize settings 5 Ready to complete	The following datastores are accessible from the destination resource that you selected. Select the destination datastore for the virtual machine configuration files and all of the virtual disks.							
	Name ~	Capacity ~	Free ~	Type ~	Thin pro $\sim$	Access ~		
	datastore1	1.81 TB	1.67 TB	VMFS5	Supported	Single		
						1 items		
<b>vm</b> ware <sup>.</sup>								
			Back	Next	Finish	Cancel		

5. On the *Customize settings* dialog, enter these settings (these are minimum settings – adjust as needed). Then click **Next**.

**CPU**: 2

Memory: 4GB

Hard disk: 32GB

SCSI Controller: LSI Logic Parallel

Network adapters: 2 of type E1000

# j)(t zpe

1 Select creation type 2 Select a name and guest OS 3 Select storage	Customize settings Configure the virtual machine hardwa	are and virtual machine additional options	
4 Customize settings 5 Ready to complete	Virtual Hardware VM Options	ork adapter 🛛 Add other device	
	Add nard disk     Mar Add netwo		
	► Memory	4 GB *	
	Hard disk 1	32 68 •	0
	SCSI Controller 0	LSI Logic Parallel	• 0
	USB controller 1	USB 2.0	•
	INE Network Adapter 1	VM Network	🔹 🗹 Connect 🛛 💿
	INN New Network Adapter	VM Network	🔻 🗹 Connect 🛛 🛞
	GD/DVD Drive 1	Host device	🔻 🗹 Connect 🛛 💿
<b>vm</b> ware	> 🏢 Video Card	Specify custom settings	•

6. On the Ready to complete dialog, review the details. Click Finish

1 Select creation type	Ready to complete	
2 Select a name and guest OS 3 Select storage	Review your settings selection before	e finishing the wizard
4 Customize settings	Provisioning type	Dew .
5 Ready to complete	Name	Nodegrid
	Datastore	datastore1
	Guest OS name	Other Linux (64-bit)
	Compatibility	ESXI 6.5 virtual machine
	vCPUs	2
	Memory	8 GB
	Network adapters	2
	Network adapter 1 network	VM Network
	Network adapter 1 type	E1000
	Network adapter 2 network	VM Network
	Network adapter 2 type	E1000
	IDE controller 0	IDE 0
	IDE controller 1	IDE 1
<b>vm</b> ware	SCSI controller 0	LSI Logic Parallel
VIIIVare	Hard disk 1	

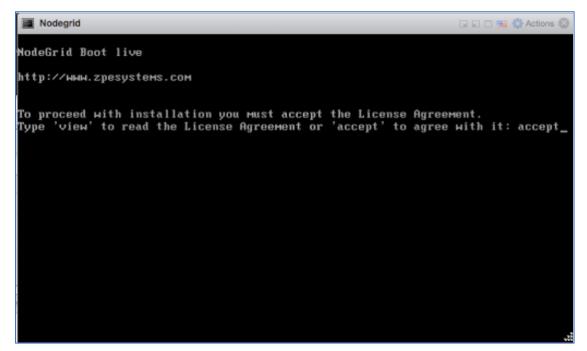
This completes the virtual machine configuration on the ESXi server.

## Install Nodegrid Manager Software

To install the software:

# ))(t zpe

- 1. On the virtual machine *Summary* screen, click the **Console** tab.
- 2. Turn on power to the virtual machine. Because there is on installed OS, the boot will fail.
- 3. Click on the CD/DVD icon and locate the Nodegrid Manager ISO file.
- 4. In the Console area, click CTL-ALT-INSERT. This reboots the virtual machine.
- 5. The virtual machine console server open with a boot prompt. The image is decompressed and then loaded.
- 6. When the image boots, follow the console instructions. To accept the EULA, type **accept**.



7. When complete, the virtual machine reboots.

Disk /dev/sda: 34.4GB Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B Partition Table: msdos Number Start End Size Type File system Flags 1 1049kB 99.6MB 98.6MB primary ext4 2 101MB 201MB 101MB primary boot 3 201MB 3202MB 3001MB primary boot 4 3202MB 34.4GB 31.2GB extended lba 5 3204MB 3304MB 99.6MB logical 6 3305MB 3315MB 9437kB logical 7 3316MB 3816MB 500MB logical 8 3817MB 34.4GB 30.5GB logical Checking current file system Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 Mounting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7 Remove your installation media, and press ENTER	Nodes	grid							💷 🗉 🔜 🏠 Actions 🔞
Partition Table: Msdos Number Start End Size Type File system Flags 1 1049kB 99.6MB 98.6MB primary ext4 2 101MB 201MB 101MB primary boot 3 201MB 3202MB 3001MB primary boot 4 3202MB 32.02MB 3001MB primary boot 5 3204MB 3304MB 99.6MB logical 5 3204MB 3305MB 99.6MB logical 6 3305MB 3315MB 9437kB logical 7 3316MB 3816MB 500MB logical 8 3817MB 34.4GB 30.5GB logical Checking current file system Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 Mounting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7	Disk ∕d	ev∕sda∶	34.4GB						
NumberStartEndSizeTypeFile systemFlags11049kB99.6MB98.6MBprimaryext42101MB201MB101MBprimaryboot3201MB3202MB3001MBprimaryboot43202MB34.4GB31.2GBextendedlba53204MB3304MB99.6MBlogicalboot63305MB3315MB9437kBlogicalboot73316MB3816MB500MBlogicalboot83817MB34.4GB30.5GBlogicalbootChecking current file systembootbootbootbootProbe HD:Directory /var or root home directory not found.bootbootCormatting partitions to ext4copying rootfs filesbefore start copyCreating swap areascopying rootfs filesbefore start copyCopying rootfs filesbefore start copyboot startBenerating factory default settings filesboot partitionboot partitionInstalling grub on /dev/sda7boot partitionboot start				ysical):	512B/512B				
1 1049kB 99.6MB 98.6MB primary ext4 2 101MB 201MB 101MB primary boot 4 3202MB 3202MB 3001MB primary boot 4 3202MB 34.4GB 31.2GB extended lba 5 3204MB 3304MB 99.6MB logical 6 3305MB 3315MB 9437kB logical 7 3316MB 3816MB 500MB logical 8 3817MB 34.4GB 30.5GB logical Checking current file system Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 Mounting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7	Partiti	on Table	: msdos						
1 1049kB 99.6MB 98.6MB primary ext4 2 101MB 201MB 101MB primary boot 4 3202MB 3202MB 3001MB primary boot 4 3202MB 34.4GB 31.2GB extended lba 5 3204MB 3304MB 99.6MB logical 6 3305MB 3315MB 9437kB logical 7 3316MB 3816MB 500MB logical 8 3817MB 34.4GB 30.5GB logical Checking current file system Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 Mounting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7	lunkor	Stant.	Fnd	Sizo	Tuno	File	oustow	Flago	
2101MB201MB101MBprimary3201MB3202MB3001MBprimaryboot43202MB34.4GB31.2GBextendedlba53204MB3304MB99.6MBlogicallogical63305MB3315MB9437kBlogicallogical73316MB3816MB500MBlogicallogical83817MB34.4GB30.5GBlogicalChecking current file systemProbe HD:Directory /var or root home directory not found.Sormatting partitions to ext4Mounting all partitions before start copyCreating swap areasCopying rootfs filesGenerating factory default settings filesPreparing second boot partitionInstalling grub on /dev/sda7							system	riays	
3 201MB 3202MB 3001MB primary boot 4 3202MB 34.4GB 31.2GB extended lba 5 3204MB 3304MB 99.6MB logical 6 3305MB 3315MB 9437kB logical 7 3316MB 3816MB 500MB logical 8 3817MB 34.4GB 30.5GB logical Checking current file system Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 founting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7	2					BAUT			
4 3202MB 34.4GB 31.2GB extended lba 5 3204MB 3304MB 99.6MB logical 6 3305MB 3315MB 9437kB logical 7 3316MB 3816MB 500MB logical 8 3817MB 34.4GB 30.5GB logical Checking current file system Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 founting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7	3							boot	
5 3204MB 3304MB 99.6MB logical 6 3305MB 3315MB 9437kB logical 7 3316MB 3816MB 500MB logical 8 3817MB 34.4GB 30.5GB logical Checking current file system Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 founting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7	4								
6 3305MB 3315MB 9437kB logical 7 3316MB 3816MB 500MB logical 8 3817MB 34.4GB 30.5GB logical Checking current file system Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 founting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7	5				logical				
7 3316MB 3816MB 500MB logical 8 3817MB 34.4GB 30.5GB logical Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 Mounting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Benerating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7	6	3305MB	3315MB	9437kB					
Checking current file system Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 Mounting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7	7	3316MB	3816MB	500MB	logical				
Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 Mounting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7	8	3817MB	34.4GB	30.5GB	logical				
Probe HD: Directory /var or root home directory not found. Formatting partitions to ext4 Mounting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7									
Formatting partitions to ext4 Mounting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7									
Mounting all partitions before start copy Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7						ector	y not fo	und.	
Creating swap areas Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7									
Copying rootfs files Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7		<b>u</b>		belore	start copy				
Generating factory default settings files Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7		-							
Preparing second boot partition Installing grub on /dev/sda7				ult cott	inge filee				
Installing grub on /dev/sda7									
					and press	ENTE	R		

8. On reboot, the Nodegrid Manager application is ready to be configured.

## **Initial Network Configuration**

The Nodegrid Platform can be accessed through a console port in HTTPS (web interface) or SSH (CLI). Other methods can be enabled later.

By default, the Nodegrid Platform is set up with DHCP IP configuration enabled.

j)(t zpe

# ))( zpe

**NOTE**: The Nodegrid Platform will respond on ETH0 at 192.168.160.10 if your DHCP server fails or is unavailable.

## Access the CLI Window

On the Nodegrid Platform's CLI window, after the boot messages, the login prompt is displayed.

#### Admin user:

Initial username = **admin** 

Initial password = **admin** (after first login, default password must be changed)

#### Super User:

Username = **root** (SHELL access to Linux OS, but not web interface)

Default password = **root** 

## Identify Current IP Address

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Use admin login to device's Nodegrid Platform.
- 2. Go to Network :: Connections.

)(t n	nodeg	grid												•	 elocitiendo -	•***
		0, 1001														
lettings.	Corre	rovers	Static Reader	-	540		Dist Server	-				1000				
							22.222.22				 	and share to	o and the out-			
	Convections															
	0.28.002		alaradar)													
etasyk=1 442 ( Na	0.28.002	Satas	Type	interface	Carrier Stat		(Put Address	Pré-Ado							MAC Address	Des
••• [	0.28.002	1422214234200	Type	interface backplanet	Carrier Stat				68 ThQ:454(4						NK Address	1000
••• [		Satus	Type Ethernet		1112210.002	•	(Pv4 Address	Mile 20076	1102-024/64	42-02/9/24		*****				1.0000 ( <del>1.000</del> 0 L

3. Review IP address(es).

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Log into device as admin.
- 2. Enter:

show /system/network\_connections/

Example output:

[admin@nodegr	[admin@nodegrid /]# show /settings/network_connections/								
name	status	type	interface	carrier state	ipv4 address	ipv6			
address		mac ad	dress	description					
========	========	=======	=======	======					
==========		== ======		========					



 BACKPLANEØ
 connected
 ethernet
 ethØ
 up
 192.168.10.252/24
 fe8Ø ::

 290:fbff:fe5b:72bc/64
 e4:1a:2c:5b:72:bc
 ETHØ
 connected
 ethernet
 backplaneØ

 up
 192.168.29.3/24
 fe8Ø ::
 290:fbff:fe5b:72bd/64
 e4:1a:2c:5b:72:bd

 hotspot
 not active
 WiFi
 down

## **Define Static IP Address**

If no DHCP server is available on your network, or to change from a dynamic to static IP, configure the network parameters.

**NOTE**: The examples below use IPv4 for communication. IPv6 is fully supported on the Nodegrid Platform. Settings are available in the same menus.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Network :: Connections.
- 2. Click on the Interface to be configured.
- 3. Enter the required details.

Settings	Connections	Sw	ritch	Static Routes	Hosts	SNMP	DHCP Server	SSL VPN	IPsec	Wireguard	Wireless Modern	Flow Expo	rter	802.1x	QoS
Network :: Co	onnections :: ETH1														
Save Ca	ncel														
		Name:	ETH1								IPv4 Mo	ide: O No	Pv4 Addre	155	
												. он	P		
		Type:	Ethern	et								⊖ sta	ic		
	le le	nterface:	eth1							~	IPv4 DNS Sen	ver:			
		cription:													
	Jes	enpoon.									IPv4 DNS Sear	rch:			
Connec	t Automatically										IPv4 Default Route Met	tric: 100			
🗆 Set as P	rimary Connection										Ignore obtained IPv4 Default Gatev				
											Ignore obtained in we belaute dates	ney			
U Enable	LLDP advertising and i	reception th	hrough this	connection							Ignore obtained DNS server				
											IPv6 Mo	ide: O No	Pv6 Addre	55	
												Add	ress Auto	Configuration	
												⊖ sta	eful DHCP	₩6	
												⊖ Sta	ic		
											IPv6 DNS Sen	ver:			
											IPv6 DNS Sear	rch:			
											IPv6 Default Route Met	tric: 100			
											Ignore obtained IPv6 Default Gatev	nay			
											Ignore obtained DNS server				

#### 4. Click Save.

#### CLI Procedure

1. Go to the desired network Interface:

cd settings/network\_connections/ETH0/

2. Configure the Network interface:

set ipv4\_mode=static

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.

# ))( zpe

```
set ipv4_address=<IP_ADDRESS> ipv4_bitmask=<BITMASK> ipv4_gateway=<GATEWAY>
commit
```

Example:

```
[admin@Nodegrid /]# cd settings/network_connections/ETH0/
[admin@Nodegrid ETH0]# set ipv4_mode=static
[admin@Nodegrid ETH0]# set ipv4_address=10.0.0.10 ipv4_bitmask=24
ipv4_gateway=10.0.0.1
[admin@Nodegrid ETH0]# show
name: ETH0
type: ethernet
ethernet_interface = eth0
connect automatically = yes
set_as_primary_connection = no
enable_lldp = no
ipv4_mode = static
ipv4 address = 10.0.0.10
ipv4_bitmask = 24
ipv4_gateway = 10.0.0.1
ipv4_dns_server =
ipv4_dns_search =
ipv6_mode = address_auto_configuration
ipv6_dns_server =
ipv6_dns_search =
[admin@Nodegrid ETH0]# commit
```

3. Follow the same steps for other interfaces.

# **General Information**

# **User Interfaces**

## WebUI View

Each device's Nodegrid Platform can be accessed from ZPE Cloud via WebUI. This provides full access to device configuration and management.

All modern browsers with HTML5 are supported, including mobile (phone/tablet) browsers. This includes Internet Explorer 11, Edge, Chrome and Firefox.



#### **Device WebUI Buttons**

Menu	Item	Description
Access	Access	Easy access for all device users. With appropriate permissions, users can start sessions, control power and review device logging details.
Tracking	<b>X</b> Tracking	Provides an overview of general statistics and system information, including system utilization and serial port statistics.
System	<b>CO</b> System	Administrators can perform general admin tasks (firmware updates, backups , restorations, licensing).
Network	Network	Access and management of all network interfaces and features.
Managed Devices	Managed Devices	Administrators can add, configure, and remove devices managed through the Nodegrid platform.
Cluster	Cluster	Administrators can configure Nodegrid Cluster feature.
Security	ြူ Security	Uer access configuration options and general security settings.
Auditing	Auditing	Administrators can configure auditing levels and locations, and some global logging settings.
Dashboard	<u>্রাাই</u> Dashboard	Users and administrators can create and view dashboards and reports.
Applications	Applications	Only visible with a valid Virtualization license. Administrators can manage and control NFVs and Docker applications.

## **CLI Interface**

The Nodegrid Platform can be accessed through a CLI interface, by connecting to the platform with a SSH client or through its console port. The interface can manage and configure the device, including access to console target sessions. CLI structure generally follows the WebUI.



#### **CLI Folders**

Folder	Description
/access	Access for all users to managed devices. Users with appropriate permissions can start sessions, control power, and review device logging details.
/system	Provides access to the combined functions of the Tracking and System menu (accessed with WebUI). Tracking features include an overview of general statistics and system information (system utilization, serial port statics, etc.). Administrators can perform general admin tasks on the Nodegrid Platform (i.e., firmware updates, backups, restorations, and licensing).
/settings	Provides access to the system, security, auditing, and managed device settings, and configuration options.

The CLI provides many commands and options. General usage includes several basic commands.

CLI Command	Description
ТАВ ТАВ	Lists all available commands, settings, or options currently available.
ls	Lists the current folder structure.
show	Displays current settings in a tabular view.
set	Initiates changes and settings with "set option=value". Multiple settings can be combined in sequence of option=value pairs (i.e., set option1=value1 option2=value2). Regular expressions are supported.
commit	Commits changes to configurations. A "show" command can display whether previous line entries were saved. If not saved, enter commit. A "+" in front of the command prompt, [i.e., +admin@nodegrid /]#" is shown only when editing an entry or configuration. To add new entries, the + indicator is not displayed – and "commit" is required.
cancel or revert	Either command can restore a setting from the most recent "commit" command.

## **CLI Commands**

#### Examples

j)(t zpe

```
[+admin@nodegrid /]# set settings/devices/ttyS2/access/ rs-
232_signal_for_device_state_detection=
CTS DCD None
[+admin@nodegrid /]# set settings/devices/ttyS2/access/ rs-
232_signal_for_device_state_detection=DCD enable_hostname_detection=yes
[+admin@nodegrid /]# commit
[admin@nodegrid /]#
```

## Shell Access

The Nodegrid Platform has direct access to the operating system's shell. By default, this is only available to the root user (directly) and admin user (from CLI). Direct shell access can be granted to users of specific groups (useful for system automation processes which require direct shell access. Authorization for usets is provided with SSH key authorization.

Access should be limited based on shell access requirements. This requires careful consideration and caution. Changes made through Shell access can have a negative impact.

## **Access to Devices**

This provides an overview of all available target devices (Search is available). Users can connect to managed devices and review current device status. User permissions and current state of Nodegrid Cluster nodes determine which devices are displayed.

## **Device Sessions**

When a user logs into the WebUI, the first page is the Access section. This is overview of all available user-accessible targets. Each device current connection status and available connection types are shown.

State	Indicator color	lcon	Description
Connected	Green	Connected	Nodegrid can successfully connect to the target device and it is available for sessions
In-Use	Blue	In-Use	The Device is currently in use
Disconnected	Orange	Disconnected	Nodegrid could not successfully connect to the target device and it is not available for sessions
Unknown	Grey	Unknown	The connection status is unknown. This is the default state for target devices with the connection mode On- Demand or for new target devices for which the discovery process is not completed.

#### **Device Sessions**

Device sessions can be directly started from this location.



## WebUI View

ye	nodeg	, i Ci								٩		🛓 admin@lknbsr01.zpesystems.local 👻	🕲 Help	🕲 Logout
L. Access	8 Tracking	ر System	Network	Contract Managed Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	୍ଲାହ୍ର Dashboard	Applications					
Table	Tree	Node	Мар	Image										
Access :: Ta	ble												📮 Pin it	C Reload
Search:				Э×								Connected In-Use	Disconnected	Unknow
~ M	lknbsr01	onsole Info												
Name					Actions	Name				Actions	Name			Actions
	vice_Console_S	erial			Console	RPDU			Cons	sole Web	D IPMI		Console	KVM Web

## Console (CLI) View

Click **Console** to display a new target session window.

root@nodegrid:~#	

Buttons at lower center can further control the target session and target device. Available options depend on connection type and device configuration.

#### **Session Options**

Options	Description
1 Info	Displays current device details.
X Full Screen	Expand the window to use the full monitor screen. The session window does not expand beyond its maximum size.
Power Off	Performs a power off on the target device through a connected Rack PDU or IPMI device.



Options	Description
▶ Power On	Performs a power on for the target device through a connected Rack PDU or IPMI device.
2 Reset	Initiates a power cycle on the target device through a connected Rack PDU or IPMI device.
Power Status	Display device's current power status (as returned by a connected Rack PDU or IPMI device).
Close Session	Closes the active session.
+	Expands or minimizes the command line options at the window's lower center.

Closing the CLI window closes the target device session.

## **Copy & Paste Functionality**

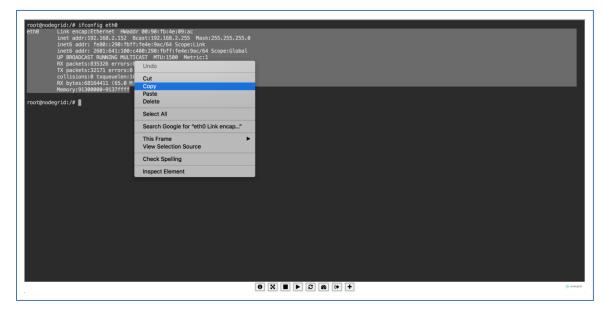
**NOTE**: TTYD terminal copy and paste is not currently supported within Windows and Linux.

Nodegrid supports **Copy & Paste** of text between the HTML5 graphical device session window and the desktop environment. Some OS may require a different key combination.

Windows and Linux user - Ctrl+Ins to copy and Shift+Ins to paste.

Mac users - Cmd+C to copy, and Cmd+V to paste.

Highlight the text and right-click to open the menu - or use the shortcuts.



## **CLI Device Sessions**

A user can directly go to this directory with cd /access.



## View currently available targets

show.

Example:

### Start a device session

connect <target name>

Example:

```
[admin@nodegrid access]# connect Device_Console_Serial
[Enter '^Ec?' for help]
[Enter '^Ec.' to cli ]
login:
```

**NOTE**: Only console sessions or sessions which provide a text-based interface can be started from the CLI.

With an established connection, use the escape sequence ^Ec or ^O to further control the session.

**NOTE**: Escape sequences can be changed in Device Settings.

#### **Session Options**

Option	Escape sequence	Description
	^Ec.	Disconnect the current session.
g	^Ecg	Display current user group information.
1	^Ecl	Send break signal (defined in Device Settings).
w	^Ecw	Display currently connected users.
<cr></cr>	^Ec <cr></cr>	Send ignore/abort command signal.
k	^Eck	Serial port (speed data bits parity stop bits flow).

# ))(t zpe

Option	Escape sequence	Description
b	^Ecb	Send a broadcast message. Type message after the escape sequence
i	^Eci	Display current serial port information.
s	^Ecs	Change current session to read-only mode.
а	^Eca	Change current session to read-write mode.
f	^Ecf	Force current session to read-write mode.
z	^Ecz	Disconnect a specific connected user session.
?	^Ec?	Print this message.

## **Power Control**

Power Control options are available on targets connected to a managed Rack PDU or provided power control through IMPI. The power menu can be displayed with ^O.

```
Power Menu - Device_Console_Serial
Options:
1. Exit
2. Status
3. On
4. Off
5. Cycle
Enter option:
```

## **Search Functionality**

The Nodegrid Platform provides advanced search capabilities to locate and view information on target devices they require.

## **Device Search**

In the WebUI, this is available on all Device views and can filter device lists based on search criteria. On the CLI, the search command is available in the access folder.

**NOTE**: The function is available on stand-alone units and units in a Cluster configuration. All changes to device information and newly added device properties are automatically updated in the System as a background function.



### **Search Field Options**

Field	Description
[search string]	A search string that represents part of or a complete string.
AND	Combines multiple search strings with an Boolean AND.
OR	Combines multiple search strings with a Boolean OR. Default search behavior for more than one search string.
NOT	Targets matching the search string with Boolean NOT are excluded from the returns.
[field name]	Limits the search results to a specific Field Name.

**NOTE**: The Boolean keywords AND, OR and NOT are case-sensitive. Lower-case is entered (and, or, not) is included as part of the search string.

#### Examples of standard and custom field data searches

This includes groups (such as "admin" group), IP addresses or a specific device.

#### Example with AND "PDU AND IPMI"

Search:	PDU AND IPMI	⊕ ×	Conne
1 result			
Name			
<i>(</i> )	PMI		

[admin@nodegrid	search]# search "PDU AND IPMI"
search: PDU AND results: 1 resu page: 1 of 1	
[admin@nodegrid name status	-
==== ===== TPMT -	
TLUT -	

### Example with OR "PDU OR IPMI"

Search: 4 results	PDU OR PMI	• ×				Connected
Name	2	Actions	Name	Actions	Name	
	IPMI Device_Console_Serial	Console KVM Web Console	RPDU	Console Web	Device_Console_SSH	



Example with "PDU IPMI"

Search:	PDU IPMI	Э×				Connected
4 results						
Name	2	Actions	Name	Actions	Name	
1	IPMI	Console KVM Web	RPDU	Console	Device_Console_SSH	
<b></b>	Device_Console_Serial	Console				

[admin@nodegrid access]#	search	"PDU IPMI"
search: PDU IPMI results: 4 results page: 1 of 1		
[admin@nodegrid search]# name	show status	action
	======	=====
IPMI	-	
RPDU	-	
Device_Console_SSH	-	
Device_Console_Serial	-	

Example with NOT "PDU AND NOT IPMI"

Search:	PDU AND NOT IPMI	Э×				Conne
3 results						
Name		Actions	Name	Actions		
N N R	PDU	Console Web	Console_SSH	Console Web	<b>PP</b> Device_Console_Serial	

[admin@nodegrid search]# search "PDU AND NOT IPMI"



Example with Field Name "name:PDU"

Search:	name:PDU	Э×	Connected
1 result			
Name			
<b>N</b> N	19DU		

```
[admin@nodegrid search]# search "name:PDU"
search: name:PDU
results: 1 result
page: 1 of 1
[admin@nodegrid search]# show
   name status action
   ==== ====== ======
   RPDU -
```

## **Global Search**

The WebUI has a Global Search field located at the top, next to current user information and log out. Global Search works in the same as Device Search and supports the same keywords. This is available at the top of all pages.

# **Access Section**

Each device on the Nodegrid platform has a device information stored in the system. This information is visible to users and is fully searchable in the system. These details are useful to help identify specific targets.



The stored information includes discovered values and those set during device configuration. An administrator can associate additional device information.

The WebUI offers multiple ways to view and access target devices. By default, all users have access to the Table view. Other views are also available and improve the accessibility or visualization of the current device status. The following views are available:

- Table View
- Tree View
- Node View
- Map View
- Image View

Each user can change the default view after login. To change the default view, display the preferred view and click **Pin It**.

**NOTE**: The Table view is the only CLI view.

## **Table tab**

This provides easy access to all target devices with current status conditions. Any connected devices to a target devices are shown on the Cluster page. See "Cluster" for more information.

**NOTE**: When attempting to access an unlicensed device or a device that has reached the device limit with the current license, an error message displays. Please contact ZPE to upgrade your license.

)(t r	node	grid						٩		📥 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 🕶	🛛 Help	O Logout
Access		ر <b>O</b> System	Network		Cluster							
Table	Tree	Node	Мар									
Access :: Ta	ble										¥ Pin i	t 🖸 Reload
Search:										Connected In-Use		-
୍ତ ର୍ଣ୍ଣାରୀ Name	nodegrid	Console Info	File Manager	Action	Nan	1e		Action	Name		•	Columns - Action
<b> </b> 💭 aa				Consol		ррр		Console	tty52			Console
1 💭 tty				Consol		ttyS4		Console	ttyS6			Console
<b>U</b> tt				Consol		tty58		Console	usbS1			Console
us	sbS2			Consol		usbS3		Console	usbS4			Console

The list can be filtered by various Search criteria. The Device Status icons (upper right) provide additional filters of the list.



## **Buttons**

• Console button – displays the Console (CLI) window.

[admin@nodegrid /]#
[admin@nodegrid /]#
[admin@nodegrid /]# [
0 🛛 +

• Info button – the pop-up dialog provides device-specific details.

Console Event Log		)(t
Description	Value	
Name	nodegrid	
Туре	Nodegrid	
IPv4 Address loopback	0.0.0.0	
IPv6 Address loopback	fe80:0000:0000:0000:000a:eaff:fe7c:f12f	
MAC Address loopback	02:0a:ea:7c:f1:2f	
IPv4 Address loopback0	0.0.0.0	
IPv6 Address Joopback0	fe80-0000-0000-ec48-78ff-feca:de97	

Pop-up dialog buttons:

**Console** button (upper right) – opens the Console (CLI) window (see above).

Event Log button (upper right) – displays the raw log details.



.

	Page 1 - 10/05/2021 18:22:55
<2021-10-05T13:21:03Z> Event ID	103: Software upgrade completed, Status: 1, New software version: 5,1,2,
<2021-10-05T13:21:03Z> Event ID	
<2021-10-05T13:21:04Z> Event ID	140: Connection up, Connection: ETHO, Interface: ethO, Type: ethernet, IP A
ddress: 192,168,7,43/24,	
	520: A Extended Storage started.
	202: User authentication failed, User: admin@192.168.14.46.
	202: User authentication failed, User: admin@192.168.14.46.
<2021-10-05T16:29:28Z> Event ID	202: User authentication failed, User: admin@192.168.14.46.
<2021-10-05T16:29:48Z> Event ID	202: User authentication failed, User: admin@192.168.14.46.
<2021-10-05T17:07:39Z> Event ID	202: User authentication failed, User: admin@192.168.14.46.
<2021-10-05T17:07:57Z> Event ID	202: User authentication failed, User: admin@192.168.14.46.
<2021-10-05T17:09:46Z> Event ID	202: User authentication failed, User: admin@192.168.14.39,
<2021-10-05T17:09:56Z> Event ID	202: User authentication failed, User: admin@192,168,14,39,
<2021-10-05T17:10:17Z> Event ID	200: A user logged into the system, User: admin@192,168,14,39, Session type
: HTTPS, Authentication Method:	Local.
<2021-10-05T17:11:30Z> Event ID	200: A user logged into the system, User: admin@192,168,14,46, Session type
: HTTPS, Authentication Method:	Local,
	201: A user logged out of the system, User: admin, Session type: unknown,
<2021-10-05T17:16:25Z> Event ID	201: A user logged out of the system, User: admin@192,168,14,39, Session ty
pe: HTTPS.	
	201: A user logged out of the system, User: admin@192,168,14,46, Session ty
pe: HTTPS.	
	202: User authentication failed, User: admin@192,168,14,39,
	200: A user logged into the system, User: admin@192,168,14,39, Session type
: HTTPS, Authentication Method:	
	200: A user logged into the system. User: admin@192.168.14.21. Session type
: HTTPS, Authentication Method:	
	102: Software upgrade started, User: root, Current version: 5,1,2, New vers
ion: 5.2.3.	
<2021-10-05T17:30:27Z> Event ID	140: Connection up. Connection: ETHO, Interface: ethO, Type: ethernet, IP A

• **File Manager** button – displays the folder and file structure. To review folder contents, click on the folder name. Root (Home)folders cannot be renamed, deleted, or moved. The basic folder structure cannot be modified. This is only available to users with administrator privileges.

O Do	ownload X	: Delete $\oplus$ Move 🥒 Rename	Ł Archive	Upload     New Folde	
<b>↑</b> /H	lome				
	Туре	Name	Size	Time	
	-	admin_group	4.00 KB	3/9/2018 4:34:56 AM	
	-	admin_home	4.00 KB	3/9/2018 4:34:56 AM	
	-	datalog	4.00 KB	9/29/2021 11:04:19 AM	
	-	datastore	4.00 KB	3/9/2018 4:34:56 AM	
	-	eventlog	4.00 KB	9/30/2021 6:40:55 AM	
	-	nodegrid_ap	4.00 KB	3/9/2018 4:34:56 AM	
	-	remote_file_system	4.00 KB	3/9/2018 4:34:56 AM	
	-	sed	4.00 KB	3/9/2018 4:34:56 AM	
	-	software	4.00 KB	9/30/2021 6:39:32 AM	

• Columns button - customizes the table columns.

Click to display and select table columns. The table adjusts according to the selections.

🏶 Columns 🗸	
🗌 Туре	
Mode	
IP Address	- 1
Nodegrid Ho	ost
Groups	- 1
Serial Port	
KVM Port	
End Point	



## **View Device Power Details**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Access :: Table.
- 2. In the **Name** column, locate and click the name (displayed dialog details change according to the type).

Console		
Description	Value	
Name	ttyS13	
Local Serial Port	ttyS13	
Baud Rate	9600	
Status	Disconnected	
Туре	local_serial	
Mode	Enabled	
Licensed	Yes	
Nodegrid Host	nodegrid.localdomain	
Telnet Port Alias	7013	
Groups	admin	

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to the access folder.
- 2. Type the show command.

Example:

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /access/
[admin@nodegrid access]# show Device_Console_Serial/
name: Device_Console_Serial
status: Connected
```

## **Tree tab**

This displays the physical hierarchies of the Nodegrid setup. Start connections can be applied to each target device. Target devices can be found based on location (i.e., Nodegrid name, city name, data center name, row and rack, and others). Filters can be applied based on location and device types. For more details, expand the *Devices*, *Appliances*, *Groups* branches.

Ú	nodeg	rid®								٩	
L Access	<b>X</b> Tracking	ر System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	ि Security	Auditing	네일 Dashboard	Applications		
Table	Tree	Node	Мар	Image							
Access :: 1	Tree										
Search:				Э×							
				0.11							
5 results											
View					Name						
> De	evices				<ul> <li>✓</li> <li></li> <li>&lt;</li></ul>	lknbsr01					
> Ap	opliances					👌 usbS3					
> Gr	oups					🧑 ІРМІ					
						C Device_Co	onsole_SSH				
						Outlet On Outlet	t Off Outlet Cycle	Outlet Status			
						1					
						Outle	et Name		Outlet	ID	
						0 🖾	Outlet_1		1		
							Outlet_2		2		
							Outlet_3		3		
									4		
									5		
									6		
									7		
									8		
						Tevice_Co	onsole_Serial				

## **Expand View Column Branches**

There are three trees in the View columns: **Devices**, **Appliances**, Groups. Details can be observed by clicking the ">".

### **Expand Individual Tree**

(For this example, Devices)

1. Click the right  $\sum$  icon to display the next branch level.

View	2W		Name
~ 0	Devi	ces	
		All	
	>	Types	
	$\sim$	Status	
		Connected	
		In-Use	
		Disconnected	
		Unknown	

- 2. If further branch levels are available, click the right  $\sum$  icon to expand the branch.
- 3. To contract the branch, click the down  $\boxed{}$  icon.

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.

Confidential

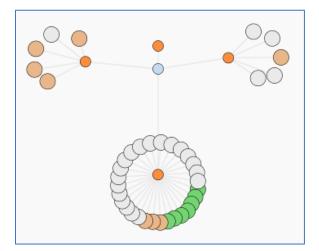


- 4. To see every item in the tree, click on **All**. Click on other items to see associated names (some clicked items may not have names).
- 5. Click on a name to display a pop-up dialog of details.

40151
4:0151
4:0151
14:0151
4:0151
2:fc95
0:2c42
0:2c42

## Node tab

This arranges all target devices around connected Nodegrid units. It provides a complete overview of all targets and Nodegrid units in a Cluster. Click on a node to review device details and connections.



## Map tab

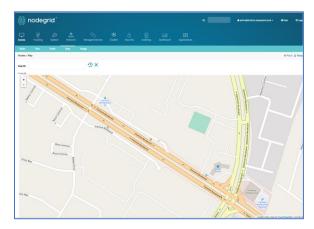
This shows device status on a global-based map. This provides an overview of all targets and Nodegrid units in a Cluster. Precise device location details are included down to a building level. Click on a marker to display information and connections.



#### **Global View**

**Zoomed in Street View** 





## Image tab

The configuration requires Professional Services implementation. Contact Customer Support at support@zpesystem.com for additional information.

This displays a custom view of Nodegrid units and target devices with associated information.

# **Tracking Section**

This provides information about the System and connected devices. This includes Open Sessions, Event List, Routing Table, System Usage, Discovery Logs, LLDP, and Serial Statistics.

## **Open Sessions tab**

This provides an overview of connected users and devices sessions.

## Sessions Table sub-tab

The Sessions table menu shows all users actively connected to the system, from where they are connecting from, and for how long.

							ZPE Cloud
Sessions Table	Devices Table						
Tracking :: Open Se	essions :: Sessions Ta	able					😂 Reloa
Terminate							Total Session
User	Mode	Source IP	Туре	Device Name	Ref S	ession Start	
🗌 admin	HTTPS	192.168.14.46	WEB		9061 T	ue Oct 5 21:20:54 2021	



## Devices Table sub-tab

The Device table menu shows information about active device sessions, the amount of connected session and the users which are connected.

Ĵĺ[[ I	node	grid®				۹			占 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 👻	Help	😃 Logout
	🖗 Tracking	<b>O</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	ि Security	Auditing	<u>ා</u> ව Dashboa			
Open Ses	sions	Event List	System Usage	Discovery Logs	Netwo	rk Di	evices	Scheduler			
Sessions T	able [	Devices Table									
Tracking ::	Open Sessio	ns :: Devices Tabl	e								C Reload
	e Sessions										
Terminat	e sessions										
	vice Name			Number	of Sessions				User	5	

If a user has permission (based on an authorization group), sessions can be terminated.

## **Event List tab**

## **Statistics sub-tab**

This provides statistical information on the system event occurrences.

26	ioue	grid						٩		📥 admin@NG-B	uilder.localdomain <del>v</del>	🕜 Help	(O Logo
	<b>R</b> Tracking	çÖ System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster		Auditing	Dashboard					
Open Sessi	ions.	Event List	Event List	System Usage	Discovery	y Logs	Network	Devices	Scheduler	HW Monitor			
tatistics	List E	vents											
racking :: E	Event List ::	Statistics											C Reloa
	1.5										AAA Event		
0. Reset Couri	nters			13 128 128 130 132 134 138 1	38 140 142 181 1	153 155 157 159	181 183 201 300 50	2 304 308 308 311 3	513 515 401 410 450		Logging Event		
0. Reset Cour Event	0.0 100 102		Description		38 140 142 151 1	153 155 157 159	181 183 201 300 30	2 304 308 308 311 1		Occurrences	Eugging Event		
0. Reset Court Event 100	0.0 100 102		Description Nodegrid Syste	em Rebooting	38 140 142 151 1	153 155 157 159	1e1 1e3 201 300 30	2 304 308 308 311 3		Occurrences 0	Categ	n Event	
0. Reset Cour Event 100 101	0.0 100 102		Description Nodegrid Syste Nodegrid Syste	em Rebooting em Started	38 140 142 151 1	153 155 157 159	161 163 201 500 50	2 304 308 308 311 3		Occurrences 0 1	Categ Systen Systen	n Event n Event	
0. Reset Court D 100 D 101 D 102	0.0 100 102		Description Nodegrid Syste Nodegrid Syste Nodegrid Softw	em Rebooting em Started ware Upgrade Started	38 140 142 151 1	155 155 157 159	101 103 201 300 30	2 304 308 308 311 1		Occurrences 0 1 0	Categ Systen Systen	n Event n Event n Event	
0. Reset Court Devent 100 101 102 103	0.0 100 102		Description Nodegrid Syste Nodegrid Soft Nodegrid Soft	em Rebooting em Started ware Upgrade Started ware Upgrade Completed		155 155 157 159	Lei 165 201 500 50	2 304 308 308 311 3		Occurrences 0 1 0 0	Categ Systen Systen Systen	n Event n Event n Event n Event	
0. Reset Coun Event 100 101 102	0.0 100 102		Description Nodegrid Syste Nodegrid Soft Nodegrid Soft Nodegrid Soft	em Rebooting em Started ware Upgrade Started		155 155 157 159	181 185 201 300 30	2 504 508 508 311 3		Occurrences 0 1 0	Table Catego System System System System System	n Event n Event n Event	

# ))(t zpe

## Events sub-tab

This displays event details.

	Event Lis	it S							ZPE Cloud
tatistics E	vents								
racking :: Event L	ist :: Events								2 Reloa
Filter: Text to f	• filter		From:	mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss	To: mm/do	d/yyyy hh:mm:ss	Search	Export to PDF	
									<b>₹ 1</b> 2
Date	Hostname	Event ID	Event Name		Description				
2021-10- 05T21:20:54Z	nodegrid	200	Nodegrid User Lo	gged In	A user logged in Method: Local.	to the system. User: a	admin@192.168.14	1.46. Session type: HTTP	S. Authentication
2021-10- 05T21:20:16Z	nodegrid	201	Nodegrid User Lo	gged Out	A user logged or	ut of the system. Use	r: admin. Session t	ype: HTTPS.	
2021-10- 05T21:20:06Z	nodegrid	201	Nodegrid User Lo	gged Out	A user logged or	ut of the system. User	r: admin@192.168.	14.46. Session type: HTT	PS.
2021-10- 05T21:13:08Z	nodegrid	200	Nodegrid User Lo	gged In	A user logged in Method: Local.	to the system. User: a	admin@192.168.14	1.46. Session type: HTTP	S. Authentication

#### List Events Main Table

Column name	Description
Date	Date the event took place.
Hostname	Name of the host where the event took place.
Event ID	Event code.
Event Name	Name of the event.
Description	Description of the event.

Events may also be filtered by start and end date, as well as by keyword via the Filter field.

To download Filtered Event List, click Export to PDF.

**NOTE**: The PDF file can contain a maximum of 10,000 results. The list is based on the Filter fields and the **From** and **To** dates.

#### **Registered Events Listing**

#### **Registered Events**

Event #	Description	Occurrences	Catagory
100	Nodegrid System Rebooting	0	System Event
101	Nodegrid System Started	1	System Event
102	Nodegrid Software Upgrade Started	0	System Event
103	Nodegrid Software Upgrade Completed	0	System Event

Event #	Description	Occurrences	Catagory
104	Nodegrid Configuration Settings Saved to File	0	System Event
105	Nodegrid Configuration Settings Applied	0	System Event
106	Nodegrid ZTP Started	0	System Event
107	Nodegrid ZTP Completed	0	System Event
108	Nodegrid Configuration Changed	0	System Event
109	Nodegrid SSD Life Left	0	System Event
110	Nodegrid Local User Added to System Datastore	0	System Event
111	Nodegrid Local User Deleted from System Datastore	0	System Event
112	Nodegrid Local User Modified in System Datastore	0	System Event
113	Nodegrid ZTP execution success	0	System Event
114	Nodegrid ZTP execution failure	0	System Event
115	Nodegrid Session Terminated	0	System Event
116	Nodegrid Session Timed Out	0	System Event
118	Nodegrid Power Supply State Changed	0	System Event
119	Nodegrid Power Supply Sound Alarm Stopped by User	0	System Event
120	Nodegrid Utilization Rate Exceeded	0	System Event
121	Nodegrid Thermal Temperature ThrottleUp	0	System Event
122	Nodegrid Thermal Temperature Dropping	0	System Event
123	Nodegrid Thermal Temperature Warning	0	System Event
124	Nodegrid Thermal Temperature Critical	0	System Event
126	Nodegrid Fan Status Changed	0	System Event
127	Nodegrid Fan Sound Alarm Stopped by User	0	System Event
128	Nodegrid Total number of local serial ports mismatch	0	System Event
129	Nodegrid dry contact change state	0	System Event

Event #	Description	Occurrences	Catagory
130	Nodegrid License Added	0	System Event
131	Nodegrid License Removed	0	System Event
132	Nodegrid License Conflict	0	System Event
133	Nodegrid License Scarce	0	System Event
134	Nodegrid License Expiring	0	System Event
135	Nodegrid Shell Started	0	System Event
136	Nodegrid Shell Stopped	0	System Event
137	Nodegrid Sudo Executed	0	System Event
138	Nodegrid SMS Executed	0	System Event
139	Nodegrid SMS Invalid	0	System Event
140	Nodegrid Connection Up	2	System Event
141	Nodegrid Connection Down	0	System Event
142	Nodegrid SIM Card Swap	0	System Event
150	Nodegrid Cluster Peer Online	0	System Event
151	Nodegrid Cluster Peer Offline	0	System Event
152	Nodegrid Cluster Peer Signed On	0	System Event
153	Nodegrid Cluster Peer Signed Off	0	System Event
154	Nodegrid Cluster Peer Removed	0	System Event
155	Nodegrid Cluster Peer Became Coordinator	0	System Event
156	Nodegrid Cluster Coordinator Became Peer	0	System Event
157	Nodegrid Cluster Coordinator Deleted	0	System Event
158	Nodegrid Cluster Coordinator Created	0	System Event
159	Nodegrid Cluster Peer Configured	0	System Event
160	Nodegrid Search Unavailable	0	System Event
161	Nodegrid Search Restored	0	System Event

Event #	Description	Occurrences	Catagory
200	Nodegrid User Logged In	3	AAA Event
201	Nodegrid User Logged Out	1	AAA Event
202	Nodegrid System Authentication Failure	4	AAA Event
300	Nodegrid Device Session Started	0	Device Event
301	Nodegrid Device Session Stopped	0	Device Event
302	Nodegrid Device Created	0	Device Event
303	Nodegrid Device Deleted	0	Device Event
304	Nodegrid Device Renamed	0	Device Event
305	Nodegrid Device Cloned	0	Device Event
306	Nodegrid Device Up	0	Device Event
307	Nodegrid Device Down	0	Device Event
308	Nodegrid Device Session Terminated	0	Device Event
310	Nodegrid Power On Command Executed on a Device	0	Device Event
311	Nodegrid Power Off Command Executed on a Device	0	Device Event
312	Nodegrid Power Cycle Command Executed on a Device	0	Device Event
313	Nodegrid Suspend Command Executed on a Device	0	Device Event
314	Nodegrid Reset Command Executed on a Device	0	Device Event
315	Nodegrid Shutdown Command Executed on a Device	0	Device Event
400	Nodegrid System Alert Detected	0	Logging Event
401	Nodegrid Alert String Detected on a Device Session	0	Logging Event
402	Nodegrid Event Log String Detected on a Device Event Log	0	Logging Event
410	Nodegrid System NFS Failure	0	Logging Event
411	Nodegrid System NFS Recovered	0	Logging Event
450	Nodegrid Datapoint State High Critical	0	Logging Event

Version 5.0

Event #	Description	Occurrences	Catagory
451	Nodegrid Datapoint State High Warning	0	Logging Event
452	Nodegrid Datapoint State Normal	0	Logging Event
453	Nodegrid Datapoint State Low Warning	0	Logging Event
454	Nodegrid Datapoint State Low Critical	0	Logging Event
460	Nodegrid Door Unlocked	0	Logging Event
461	Nodegrid Door Locked	0	Logging Event
462	Nodegrid Door Open	0	Logging Event
463	Nodegrid Door Close	0	Logging Event
464	Nodegrid Door Access Denied	0	Logging Event
465	Nodegrid Door Alarm Active	0	Logging Event
466	Nodegrid Door Alarm Inactive	0	Logging Event
467	Nodegrid PoE Power Fault	0	Logging Event
468	Nodegrid PoE Power Budget Exceeded	0	Logging Event

## System Usage tab

This presents information usage details.

## Memory Usage sub-tab

Memory Usage	CPU Usage	Disk Usage					
Fracking :: System U	Jsage :: Memory Us	sage					C Reload
	Men	thed	Used Free	Swap	Used		
Memory Type			Total (Kb)	Used (Kb)		Free (Kb)	
Mem			3924048	2557072		1366976	
Swap			1048572	0		1048572	

## CPU Usage sub-tab

CPU Usage	Disk Usage							
Jsage :: CPU Usage	2							C Reload
CPU	Usage							
		User System						
idle 99%		Waiting I/O						
	System %		Idle %		Waiti	ng I/Q %		
	1		99		0			
	CPU Usage Jsage :: CPU Usage CPU	CPU Usage Jsage :: CPU Usage CPU Usage	CPU Usage Usage :: CPU Usage CPU Usage User System Idle 2005 Waiting I/O	CPU Usage Usage :: CPU Usage CPU Usage	CPU Usage Jsage :: CPU Usage CPU Usage User System I Idle Waiting I/O	CPU Usage CPU Usage CPU Usage User System I tile Waiting I/D	CPU Usage CPU Usage CPU Usage User System I Idle Waiting I/D	CPU Usage CPU Usage CPU Usage User System Idle Waiting I/D

## Disk Usage sub-tab

emory Usage	CPU Usage	Disk Usage									
racking :: System l	Jsage :: Disk Usage										C Relo
Con	figuration		Root	Ba	ckup	Swap		Boot		Logs	
2500000 200000 1500000 500000 0	(Rb) (Rb) (Rb) (Rb)	7500 5000 2500	(Kb)	75000 50000 25000 0	Used (pb) Available (pb)	80000 60000 40000 20000 0	Used (Kb) (Kb) (Kb)	23000000 20000000 10000000 5000000 0	(Kb) (Kb) (Kb)	100000 750000 250000 0	Ф)
Partition		Size (Kb)	Used (F	۲b)	Availa	ble (Kb)		Use %	0	Description	
/dev/sda2		91099	25632		58586			31	c	Configuration	
/dev/sda3		2822144	1510584		113620	D		58	R	loot	
/dev/sda5		90099	1551		81739			2	E	Jackup	

## **Discovery Logs tab**

This shows the logs of the discovery processes set on the Managed Devices setting for auto discovery.

Access Tracking	<b>رک</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	ିଆସି Dashboard	Applications	
Open Sessions E	vent List	System Usage	Discovery Logs	Netwo	ork Dev	rices	Scheduler	HW Monitor	
Tracking :: Discovery Logs									C Reload
Reset Logs									
Date	IP Address	Device Nan	ne					Discovery Method	Action
Fri Aug 16 16:19:47 2019	N/A	usbS0-2						KVM USB	Device Connected
Fri Aug 16 16:19:47 2019	N/A	usbS3-16						KVM USB	Device Connected
Fri Aug 16 16:19:47 2019	N/A	usbS0-1						SENSOR USB	Device Connected
Fri Aug 16 16:19:48 2019	N/A	usbS1-1						Serial USB	Device Connected
Fri Aug 16 16:19:48 2019	N/A	usbS0-3						Serial USB	Device Connected
Fri Aug 16 16:19:48 2019	N/A	usbS1-13						Serial USB	Device Connected



#### **Discovery Logs Table**

Column name	Description
Date	Date of the log entry.
IP Address	IP address of device.
Device Name	Name of the device.
Discovery Method	Discovery method used to identify the log entry.
Action	The action that occurred that generated the log entry.

## **Reset Logs**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Tracking :: Discovery Logs.
- 2. Click Reset Logs.

The table will clear.

## **Network tab**

This displays network Interface information, LLDP and the Routing Table details.

C	R Tracking	<b>CO</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster		Auditing	<u>ାଏ</u> Dashboard	Applications	
Open Session	s Eve	ent List	System Usage	Discovery Logs	Netw	vork Devi	ces	Scheduler	HW Monitor	
Interface	Switch Inter	rfaces LLI	DP Routing	g Table	e					
Fracking :: Net	work :: Interfa	ce								2 Reload
IfName	H	fIndex	State	Rx Packets		Tx Packets		Collisions	Dropped	Errors
backplane0	5		Up	0		15291		0	0	0
backplane1	6		Up	0		15333		0	0	0
docker0	1	2	Down	0		0		0	0	0
eth0	7		Up	1073398		175196		0	0	0
eth1	8		Down	0		0		0	0	0
loopback	3		Up	0		32		0	0	0
loopback0	4		Up	0		32		0	0	0
tap0	9		Down	0		0		0	4208	0
virbr0	1	3	Down	0		0		0	0	0
virbr0-nic	1	.4	Down	0		0		0	0	0

## Interface sub-tab

This displays the network interface statistics, like state, package counters, collisions, dropped and errors.

# ))(t zpe

## Switch Interface sub-tab

This shows switch interfaces.

## LLDP sub-tab

This shows devices that advertise their identity and capabilities on the LAN. LLDP advertising and reception can be enabled in Nodegrid with network connections.

## Routing Table sub-tab

This shows the routing rules that Nodegrid follows for network communications. Any added static network routes are included.

Access Tracking System	Network Managed Devices	Cluster	Security Aud	itting Dashboard Applications	
Open Sessions Event List	System Usage Discovery Log	s Netwo	rk Devices	Scheduler HW Monitor	
Interface Switch Interfaces	LLDP Routing Table				
Tracking :: Network :: Routing Table					C Reload
Destination	Gateway	Metric	Interface	From	Table
0.0.0.0/0	192.168.2.202	0	eth0	192.168.2.146	eth0
0.0.0.0/0	192.168.2.202	90	eth0	all	main
172.17.0.0/16	4	0	docker0	all	main
192.168.122.0/24	5	0	virbr0	all	main
192.168.2.0/24		0	eth0	192.168.2.146	eth0
192.168.2.0/24		90	eth0	192.168.2.146	eth0
192.168.2.0/24	:	90	eth0	all	main
2601:641:100:c400::/64	2	1024	eth0	2601:641:100:c400:290:fbff:fe60:2cc0	eth0
2601:641:100:c400::/64	5	90	eth0	2601:641:100:c400:290:fbff:fe60:2cc0	eth0
2601:641:100:c400::/64	1	90	eth0	all	main
::/0	fe80::225:90ff:fe23:c0b4	1024	eth0	2601:641:100:c400:290:fbff:fe60:2cc0	eth0
::/0	fe80::225:90ff:fe23:c0b4	90	eth0	all	main
fe80::/64		256	eth0	2601:641:100:c400:290:fbff:fe60:2cc0	eth0
fe80::/64		256	eth0	all	main
fe80::/64	,	256	loopback	all	main

## **Devices tab**

This shows connection statistics for physically connected devices, like serial and USB devices, and wireless modems. The available options will depend on the specific Nodegrid unit.

## Serial Statistics sub-tab

This provides statistical information on the serial ports connectivity such as transmitted and received data, RS232 signals, errors.



		(racking		<b>O</b> stem	Network	Manager	d Devices	Cluster	Securi		iting	Dashboard	Applications			
Open	Session	5	Event Li	st	System Usag	je Di	scovery Logs	Ne	twork	Devices	Sche	duler	HW Monitor			
erial	Statistic	s U	SB devic	ies I	Wireless Mod	em										
racki	ng :: Dev	ices :: Seri	al Statis	tics											0	Reload
								Ser	ial Statistic	5						
	800															Rx
	600															Tx
	400									1						
	200															
	0	2-1	2-2	2-3	2-4	2-5	2-6 2-	7 2-	8 2-9	2-10	2-11	2-12	2-13 2-14	2-15	2-16	
Rese	t Statistic	s														
	Port	Device N	lame	Speed	RX Bytes	TX Bytes	RS-232 Sig	nals	CTS shift	DCD shift	Frame Er	ror Overr	un Parity Error	Break	Buffer Ove	errun
	2-1	ttyS2-1		115200	743	17	RTS CTS DTR	DSR CD	D	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0	2-2	ttyS2-2		9600	0	0	RTS DTR		D	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0	2-3	ttyS2-3		9600	0	0	RTS DTR		D	0	0	0	0	0	0	
0	2-4	ttyS2-4		9600	0	0	RTS DTR		D	0	0	0	0	0	0	
	2-5	ttyS2-5		9600	0	0	RTS DTR		D	0	0	0	0	0	0	

## USB Devices sub-tab

This provides details about connected USB devices and initialized drivers.

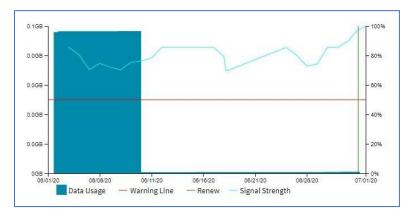
ccess Trackin	ر ng System	Network Ma	naged Devices	Cluster S	ecurity Auditin	୍ମାହ ng Dashboard	Applications	
Open Sessions	Event List	System Usage	Discovery Logs	Network	Devices	Scheduler	HW Monitor	
erial Statistics	USB devices	Wireless Modem						
racking :: Devices ::	USB devices							C Reload
USB Port	USB Path	USB ID	Detec	ted Type	Kerne	el Device	Description	
S3-16	10-4	2f47:2285	KVM D	evice	usbS3	-16	KVM Adapter	
S1-1	11-1	067b:2303	Serial	Device	usbS1	-1	USB-Serial Controller D	
S1-13	17-1	0403:6001	Serial	Device	usbS1	-13	FT232R USB UART	
0-2	1-1	2f47:2285	KVM D	evice	usbS0	-2	KVM Adapter	
0-3	1-2	0403:6001	Serial	Device	usbS0	-3	FT232R USB UART	
0-1	1-3	289b:0503	Sensor	Device	usbS0	-1	TRH320	

## Wireless Modem sub-tab

This displays information about slot, SIM status, and signal strength.

If Data Usage Monitoring is enabled, mobile data usage statistics for each SIM can be viewed, on the graphs.

Version 5.0



To manually reset Usage statistics, click Reset.

## **Scheduler tab**

This provides information about scheduled tasks.

## **HW Monitor tab**

This displays Nodegrid system information. Three sub-tabs provide critical system information.

## Thermal sub-tab

	Tracking	<b>ی</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster		Auditing	Jan Dashboard		
Open Sessi	ions E	vent List	System Usage	Discovery Logs	Networ	k Dev	rices	Scheduler	HW Monitor	
hermal	Power	USB Senso	rs							
racking :: H	W Monitor :: T	nermal								
Name						Val	ue		Unit	Description
CPU Tempe	erature					57			Celsius	CPU temperature
System Ten	nperature					52			Celsius	System temperature
CPU Fan						0			RPM	CPU FAN speed
System Fan	1					718	7		RPM	System FAN 1 speed
System Fan	2					718	7		RPM	System FAN 2 speed
Switch Fan						0			RPM	Switch FAN speed

Details displayed:

CPU Temperature (C)
System Temperature (C)
CPU Fan (RPM)
System Fan 1 (RMP)
System Fan 2 (RPM)
Switch Fan (RPM)

# ))(t zpe

## Power sub-tab

	<b>X</b> Tracking	<b>رک</b> System	Network	C	Cluster		Auditing	୍ଲାହି Dashboard		
Open Sessi	ons	Event List	System Usage	Discovery Logs	Networ	'k	Devices	Scheduler	HW Monitor	
Thermal	Power	USB Sensors	s							
Tracking :: H	W Monitor :	: Power								
Name				Value			Unit			Description
PS1				ON			NA			Power Supply 1 State
PS2				OFF			NA			Power Supply 2 State

Details displayed:

PS1

PS2

## USB Sensors (or I/O Ports) sub-tab

The details shown depend on the model.

	<b>X</b> Tracking	<b>رک</b> System	Network	C	Cluster		Auditing	الله) Dashboard		
Open Sessi	ons	Event List	System Usage	Discovery Logs	Netwo	'k Dev	vices	Scheduler	HW Monitor	
Thermal	Power	USB Sensors								
Tracking :: H	IW Monitor :	: USB Sensors								
Name				Value				Unit		Descriptio

Additional USB sensors (or I/O ports in use) are displayed here.

Thermal menu displays the current CPU temperature, System temperature, and FAN speeds (if available).

Power menu displays information about current Power sources (current state and power consumption).

I/O Ports menu is only available on devices with GPIO ports, like the Nodegrid Gate SR and Nodegrid Link SR. It will show the current status of GPIO ports.

## I/O Ports (GPIO) sub-tab

This shows the status of GPIO ports (only displayed for models with GPIO ports, i.e., Nodegrid Gate SR and Nodegrid Link SR).

Example shown – Nodegrid Gate SR

ŋ)(î <b>n</b>	odeg	grid®			۹			admin@GateSR.lc	ocaldomain <del>v</del>	🕑 Help	එ Logout
	Tracking	<b>C</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	ि Security	Auditing	네일 Dashboard			
Open Sessio	ons	Event List	System Usage	Discovery Logs	Netwo	ork C	)evices	Scheduler	HW Monitor		
Thermal	Power	I/O Ports									
Tracking :: H	W Monitor ::	I/O Ports									2 Reload
Name		Value	Direc	tion	Descri	ption					
OUTO		Low	Outpu	ıt	lab's do	or					
Relay		Open	Outpu	t	my rela	у					
DIO0		Low	Input		dio0Inp	ut My test wit	h space \$#@				
DIO1		Low	Outpu	ıt	diolout	tput high					

# **System Section**

System settings are configured for each device, including license keys, general system settings, firmware updates, backup and restore, and more.

## License tab

This displays all licenses enrolled on this Nodegrid device, with license key, expiration date, application, etc. Number of licenses (used and available) are shown in upper right. Licenses can be added or deleted. If licenses expire or are deleted, the devices exceeding the total licenses changes status to "unlicensed" (information is retained in the System). Unlicensed devices are not shown on the Access tab.

For Nodegrid access and control, each managed device must have a license. The required license for each Nodegrid serial port is included with the device.

**NOTE**: A managed device is any physical or virtual device defined under Nodegrid for access and control.

## Manage Licenses

#### Add a License

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: License.
- 2. Click Add (displays dialog).



License	Preferences	Date and Time	Toolkit	Logging	Custom Fields	Dial Up	Scheduler	Remote File S
System :: Lice	nse							
Save	cel							
Enter Lice	nse Key in format XXXX	(X-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX						
	Licen	ise Key:						

- 3. Enter License Key.
- 4. Click Save.

#### **Delete a License**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: License.
- 2. Select the checkbox.
- 3. Click Delete.

## **Preferences tab**

Main system preferences are configured in this tab. Any change in the fields activates the **Save** button.

## **Nodegrid Location**

License	Preferences	Date and Time	Toolkit	Logging	Custom Fields
System :: Pref	ferences				
Save					
Jave					
Nodegri	id Location				
					0
Addre	ess Location:			(	0
	Coordinates				
	(Lat,Lon):				
He	elp Location:	https://www.zpesystems.com	n/ng/v5_2/Nodegri	dManual5.2.html	

### **Edit Location Preferences**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Preferences.
- 2. In the Nodegrid Location menu:

Enter Address Location (a valid address for the device location).



Enter **Coordinates (Lat, Lon)** (if GPS is available, click Compass icon – or manually enter GPS coordinates).

For Help Location, enter alternate URL location for the User Guide.

**NOTE**: The administrator can download the documentation from ZPE (HTML5 or PDF, as preferred) to be available to users (when Help icon is clicked.

3. When done, click **Save**.

### Session Idle Timeout

This is the number of seconds of session inactivity until the session times out and logs the user off.

Session Idle Time	Session Idle Timeout						
Timeout [seconds]:	6000						
For TELNET, SSH, HTT	For TELNET, SSH, HTTP, HTTPS and Console sessions.						

#### **Change Timeout**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Preferences.
- 2. In the Session Idle Timeout menu:

In Timeout (seconds), enter one of these:

**zero** (0) – the session will never expire.

Value (i.e., 6000 keeps session active for 100 minutes).

**NOTE**: This setting applies to all telnet, SSH, HTTP, HTTPS, and console sessions.

3. Click Save.

## Nodegrid Configuration

The Revision Tag field is a free format string used as a configuration reference tag. This field can be manually updated or updated with an automated change management process.

The Latest Profile Applied shows the last applied profile (through a ZTP process or the ZPE Cloud).

Nodegrid Configur	ation					
Revision Tag:	rl					
Latest Profile Applied:	•					
Show Hostname on WebUI Header						



### **Modify Nodegrid Configuration**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Preferences.
- 2. In the Nodegrid Configuration menu:

#### Enter Revision Tag.

(optional) Select **Show Hostname on WebUI Header** checkbox (this displays the device hostname on the WebUI banner. Select color (click in color grid or enter RGB or CYMK.

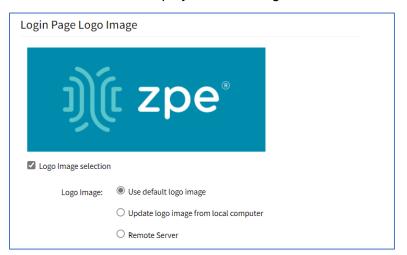


3. Click Save.

### Login Page Logo Image

The administrator can change the logo image (png or jpg) used on the Nodegrid WebUI login. It can be uploaded from the local desktop or a remote server (FTP, TFTP, SFTP, SCP, HTTP, and HTTPS). This is the URL format (username and password may be required): <PROTOCOL>://<ServerAddress>/<Remote File>.

After upload, refresh the browser cache to display the new image.



#### **Update Logo Image Selection**

#### WebUI Procedure

4. Go to System :: Preferences.

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



- 5. In the Logo Page Logo Image menu:
- 6. (optional) Select Logo Image selection checkbox.

In Logo Image menu, select one:

Use default logo image radio button.

**Update log image from local computer** radio button. Click **Choose File** to locate and select logo (jpg, png).

Logo Image:	○ Use default logo image				
	Update logo image from local computer				
	Filename Choose File No file chosen				

**Remote Server** radio button. Enter **URL**, **Username**, **Password**. (as needed) Select **The path in url to be used as absolute pathname** checkbox.

Logo Image:	○ Use default logo image				
	$\bigcirc$ Update logo image from local computer				
	Remote Server				
	URL:				
	Username:				
	Password:				
	$\Box$ The path in url to be used as absolute path name				

## Login Banner Message

Nodegrid can be configured to show a login banner on Telnet, SSHv2, HTTP, HTTPS and Console login. This banner is displayed on the device login page. The default content (below) can be edited.

WARNING: This private system is provided for authorized use only and it may be monitored for all lawful purposes to ensure its use. All information including personal information, placed on or sent over this system may be monitored and recorded. Use of this system, authorized or unauthorized, constitutes consent to monitoring your session. Unauthorized use may subject you to criminal prosecution. Evidence of any such unauthorized use may be used for administrative, criminal and/or legal actions.



5	
Banner	WARNING: This private system is provided for authorized use only and it may be
	monitored for all lawful purposes to ensure its use. All information
	including personal information, placed on or sent over this system may be
	monitored and recorded. Use of this system, authorized or unauthorized,
	constitutes consent to monitoring your session. Unauthorized use may
	subject you to criminal prosecution. Evidence of any such

#### Change Message to appear on Login Page

The message can include device-specific information, such as Device Alias or other device identifier detail.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Preferences.
- 2. In the Logo Banner Message menu:

Click in **Banner**.

Modify text, as needed (to control line length, use *Enter* for hard returns).

3. Click Save.

#### **Utilization Rate Events**

This sets up event notifications for utilization rates.

Utilization Rate Eve	ents					
Enable Local Serial Ports Utilization Rate						
Enable License Utilizati	on Rate					
Percentage to trigger events:	90					

#### **Set Utilization Rate**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Preferences.
- 2. In the Utilization Rate Events menu:

(optional) Select Enable Local Serial Ports Utilization Rate checkbox.

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



Select **Enable License Utilization Rate** checkbox and enter **Percentage to trigger events**. (An event notification is generated when the entered percentage is reached.)

3. Click Save.

## Serial Console

This displays the baud speed of the device.

Serial Console		
Speed:	115200	~

#### Set Serial Console Speed

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Preferences.
- 2. In the Serial Console menu:

On Speed drop-down, select baud rate (9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, 115200).

3. Click Save.

### **Power Supplies**

This displays the state of dual power supplies (ON/OFF).

To get an alarm when one power supply goes down, select Enable alarm sound checkbox.

To acknowledge an alarm state, click Acknowledge Alarm State (top left).

### **Network Boot**

Nodegrid can boot from a network ISO image. Enter the unit's IPv4 address and netmask, ethernet interface (eth0 or eth1), and ISO image URL. Use this URL format: http://ServerIPAddress/PATH/FILENAME.ISO

Network Boot	
Unit IPv4 Address:	192.168.160.1
Unit Netmask:	255.255.255.0
Unit Interface:	eth0 ~
ISO URL:	http://ServerIPAddress/PATH/FILENAME.ISO

### Set Network Boot

#### WebUI Procedure

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



- 1. Go to System :: Preferences.
- 2. In the Network Boot menu:

Enter Unit IPv4 Address.

Enter Unit Netmask.

On Unit Interface drop-down, select one (eth0, eth1).

Enter ISO URL.

3. Click Save.

## PXE Boot

Nodegrid supports PXE boot (Pre-Boot Execution Environment). PXE is part of the UEFI (Unified Extensible Firmware Interface) used to boot a software image retrieved at boot time from a network server. Data centers prefer this method for OS booting, installation, and deployment.

By default, PXE boot is enabled in Nodegrid. It can be disabled on WebUI (Security::Services) or CLI (/settings/services scope). The example shows how to configure the DHCP/PXE server in Linux (Ubuntu) with installed Apache web server, tftpd-hpa service and Nodegrid 4.1.x.

**NOTE:** PXE, DHCP and TFTP servers must be installed.

- 1. Download Nodegrid network boot files (tarball) Contact Support to obtain the file
- 2. Copy Nodegrid network boot tar.gz(tarball) file to the DHCP server
- 3. Unzip the tar file (creates two directories: nodegrid 4.1.xx and boot).

Alternatively, create the directory and put tar file in that directory. Then unzip the tarball file (i.e., cd /var/lib/tftpboot/PXE directory).

Example:

```
root@ubuntu-srv1:~# cd /var/lib/tftpboot/
root@ubuntu-srv1:/var/lib/tftpboot# ls -1
drwxrwxr-x 2 root root 4096 Apr 24 03:20 nodegrid-4.1.xx
root@ubuntu-srv1:/var/lib/tftpboot# ls -1 nodegrid-4.1.xx
total 558468
-rw-r-r-- 1 root root 22270823 Apr 24 03:19 initrd
-rw-rw-r-- 1 root root 544343672 Apr 24 03:19 rootfs.img.gz
-rw-rw-r-- 1 root root 544343672 Apr 24 03:19 version
-rw-r--- 1 root root 5242832 Apr 24 03:19 version
-rw-r--- 1 root root 5242832 Apr 24 03:19 vmlinuz
root@ubuntu-srv1:/var/lib/tftpboot#
```

4. Open **dhcpd.conf** and add these lines in the "host definition" section. The hardware ethernet value must match the Nodegrid device MAC address, and the fixed-address is the Nodegrid device IP address.

```
host PXEboot_NSC {
    hardware ethernet e4:1a:2c:56:02:9e;
```



```
fixed-address 192.168.22.61;
option tftp-server-name "192.168.22.201";
next-server 192.168.22.201;
option bootfile-name "PXE/boot/grub/i386-pc/core.0";
# option bootfile-name "nodegrid-4.1.xx/boot/grub/i386-pc/core.0";
option domain-name "zpesystems.com";
option domain-name-servers 192.168.22.205, 75.75.75.75, 75.75.76.76;
option routers 192.168.22.202;
}
```

5. On Web server (i.e., Apache), cd /var/www and create a soft link to the file for the network boot: In -s and filename to link to the directory.

```
root@ubuntu-srv1:/var/www# pwd
root@ubuntu-srv1:/var/www#
root@ubuntu-srv1:/var/www# ln -sf /var/lib/tftpboot/PXE/nodegrid-4.1.xx/ nodegrid-
4.1.xx
```

6. Restart the DHCP server.

sudo service isc-dhcp-server restart

- 7. Restart tftpd-hpa process.
- 8. Start the Nodegrid device. This installs the Nodegrid netboot image on device.

## **Date and Time tab**

Nodegrid devices supports NTP (Network Time Protocol) Authentication and Cellular Tower Synchronization. This default configuration is set to automatically retrieve accurate date/time from any server in the NTP pool.. NTP authentication provides an extra safety measure for Nodegrid to ensure that the timestamp it receives has been generated by a trusted source, protecting it from malicious activity or interception.

### Local Settings sub-tab

If needed, the date/time can be manually set. NTP is the default configuration. In manual configuration mode, Nodegrid device uses its internal clock to provide date and time information. Refresh the page to see the current system time. Date and time synchronization from cell tower is an additional convenience that obtains exact time directly from the carrier network.

To set the local time zone, select from the drop-down menu (default: UTC).

**NOTE**: All timestamps in Event Logs are in UTC.

#### **Configure Local Time**

Use this dialog to setup local time and UTC time zone for the device location.

WebUI Procedure

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



1. Go to System :: Date and Time :: Local Settings.

										_
			es Date ar	nd Time						
Lo	ocal Settings	NTP S	Gerver NTP A	Authentication						
Sy	ystem :: Date ar	nd Time :: L	ocal Settings							C Rel
	Save									
	Date and	Time					Time Zone			
	Last	query at:	Mon Oct 18 15:30	:28 UTC 2021			Opt	tions: UTC		~
	Date a	and Time:	Auto via Networ	rk Time Protocol						
			Last update (UTC):	Mon Oct 18 1	4:57:40 2021 (44.)	190.40.123)				
			Server:	pool.ntp.org						
			O Manual							

2. In Date and Time menu:

In Date and Time, select one:

Auto via Network Time Protocol radio button:

Enter Server.

Manual radio button:

Manu	al					
0		Octo	ber 20	021		0
Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
					1	2
3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10	11	12	13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20	21	22	23
24	25	26	27	28	29	30
31				4		6
		Choo	ose Ti	me		
Time			15:30	28		
Hou						
Minu	te					
Seco	nd					

Scroll through **Calendar** and select date.

In Choose Time, enter hour, minute, second.

3. In *Time Zone* menu:

On **Options** drop-down, select the appropriate time zone.

4. Click Save.

# ))(t zpe

### **Cellular Tower Synchronization**

This is supported by units with an installed Wireless Modem card and valid SIM card. The Nodegrid device can get date/time from the cellular tower. The SIM card must be registered to the carrier network).

#### WebUI Procedure

1. Go to System :: Date and Time :: Local Settings.

License	Preferences	Date and 1	Time Toolkit	Logging	Custom Fields	Dial Up	Scheduler	SMS	I/O Ports	
ocal Setting	s NTP Au	thentication								
ystem :: Date	e and Time :: Lo	cal Settings								😂 Reloa
Save										
Sure										
Date an	d Time				Tir	me Zone				
bute un	u mile					Lone				
	Last query at:	Tue Sep 3 14:00:3	1 PDT 2019			Options	US/Pacific			\$
		Auto via Network								
ſ	Date and Time:									
		Last update (UTC):	Tue Sep 03 21:00:20 20	19 (192.168.2.72)						
		Server:	192.168.2.72 1							
		Manual								
Cellular	Tower Sync	chronization								
_	e Date and Time S									

2. In Cellular Tower Synchronization menu:

#### Select Enable Date and Time Synchronization checkbox.

- 3. Make other changes, as needed.
- 4. Click Save.

**NOTE**: Both NTP and Cellular Tower Synchronization can be enabled. The last date/time received from either source is applied. This allows updated date/time with any connection failover configuration.

## NTP Authentication sub-tab

NTP reduces security risks associated with time synchronization. With authentication, there is assurance a generated response is from an expected source (rather than maliciously generated or intercepted). Authentication applies a list of agreed keys (passwords) between a server and a client. Communication between server and client is encrypted with one of the agreed keys appended to the messages. The appended key is un-encrypted to ensure it matches one of the agreed keys. Only then is action taken.



	Preferences	Date and Time				
Local Settings	NTP Server	NTP Authentication				
System :: Date	and Time :: NTP Auth	entication				<b>∂</b> Reload
Add Delet	re					
C Key N	umber		Has	h Algorithm		
1234			SHA2	256		

#### **Configure Key Number Set**

This requires Admin privileges. Repeat the process for each key number set.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Date and Time :: NTP Authentication.
- 2. Click Add (displays dialog).

	<b>X</b> Tracking	<b>O</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster		Auditing	کی ا Dashboard			
License	Preference	ces D	ate and Time	- Toolkit I	Logging	Custom Fields	Dial Up	Scheduler	SMS	I/O Ports	
Local Setting	gs NTP /	Authenticatio	n								
System :: Da	te and Time :: I	NTP Authenti	cation								C Reload
	Key Number:										
Ha	ash Algorithm:	SHA256				\$					
	Password:										

- 3. For **Key Number**, enter any unsigned integer (range: 1 to 2<sup>32</sup> 1
- 4. On Hash Algorithm drop-down, select one (MD5, RMD160, SHA1, SHA256, SHA384, SHA512, SHA3-224, SHA3-256, SHA3-384, SHA3-512).
- 5. For **Password**, enter a character string (space character not allowed).

Alternatively, enter a hexadecimal number with prefix HEX######.

6. Click Save.

#### **Delete Key Number**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Date and Time :: NTP Authentication.
- 2. Select checkbox next to Key Number to be deleted.
- 3. Click **Delete**.

#### Link the NTP server and Key Number

#### WebUI Procedure

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



- 1. Go to System :: Date and Time :: Local Settings.
- 2. Use separator '|' (pipe) between server address and its key number.

Last query at:	Mon Oct 18 15:56:54 UT0	2021	
Date and Time:	Auto via Network Time	Protocol	
	Last update (UTC):	Mon Oct 18 15:56:53 2021 ()	
	Server:	127.21.2.2 2	
	O Manual		

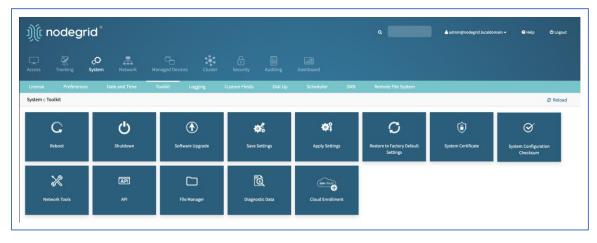
- 3. Make other changes, as needed.
- 4. Click Save.

## **Toolkit tab**

System maintenance features are available in System::Toolkit page. This toolkit is used to run the following:

- Reboot
- Shutdown
- Software upgrade
- Save Settings
- Apply Settings
- Restore to Factory Default Settings
- System Certificate
- System Configuration Checksum
- Network tools
- API
- File Manager (only accessible with Admin privileges)
- Diagnostic Data
- Cloud Enrollment





## Reboot

Reboot command is a graceful shutdown and reboot of the Nodegrid device. A warning message informs that all active sessions will be dropped. During a reboot, the operating system is automatically restarted.

On click, displays pop-up dialog. Click **OK** to continue.

192.168.7.20 says		
All active sessions will be dropped. Do you want to proceed with system reboot?		
	ОК	Cancel

## Shutdown

On a shutdown, the operating system will be brought to a halted state. At this point, it is safe to drop the power supply to the unit (turn off power supplies or removing power cords). To turn the unit back on, the power supply must be stopped and then restarted.

On click, displays pop-up dialog. Click **OK** to continue.

192.168.7.20 says		
All active sessions will be dropped and this syst Do you want to proceed with system shutdown		rned off.
	ОК	Cancel

## Software Upgrade

There are three methods for device software upgrades:

- From the Nodegrid device
- From the connected local computer
- From a remote server



The new software ISO image must be previously loaded.

• To upgrade from the Nodegrid device itself, place the new software ISO file in /var/sw.

• To upgrade from a connected local computer, click on the **Local Computer** radio button. Locate and select the file.

• To upgrade from a remote server, click **Remote Server** radio button. Enter the server URL and required username and password. Supported protocols: FTP, TFTP, SFTP, SCP, HTTP, and HTTPS. The URL can be the IP address or hostname/FQDN. (If using IPv6, include brackets [].)

Example:

```
ftp://192.168.22.21/downloads/Nodegrid_v4.1.0_20191225.iso
```

If downgrading, the options are:

- Apply factory default configuration.
- Restore a saved configuration.

## **Save Settings**

This saves current configuration.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click Save Settings icon (displays dialog).

				Logging	
System :: Too	lkit :: Save Settings				
Save	ncel				
	Destination: <ul> <li>L</li> </ul>	ocal System Filename:			
		ocal Computer emote Server			
Current c	onfiguration settings w	Il be saved to one of the	edestinations.		

3. In Destination menu, select one.

Local System radio button. Enter File Name.

Local Computer radio button. Click Save (file is saved on the local computer Download folder.

**Remote Server** radio button. Enter **URL**, **Username**, and **Password**. (as needed) Select **Download path is absolute path name** checkbox.

The URL can be the IP address or hostname/FQDN. If using IPv6, use brackets [ ... ]. Supported protocols: FTP, TFTP, SFTP, and SCP.



Destination:	O Local System
	O Local Computer
	Remote Server
	URL:
	Username:
	Password:
	□ The path in url to be used as absolute path name

#### 4. Click Save.

**NOTE**: The option to save to ZPE Cloud is only available if ZPE Cloud is enabled.

## **Apply Settings**

Saved configurations can be loaded from the Nodegrid device, a local connected computer, or from a remote server. When applied on the Nodegrid device, that becomes the new configuration. The server address can be the IP address or hostname/FQDN. If using IPv6, use brackets [ ... ]. Supported protocols: FTP, TFTP, SFTP, SCP, HTTP and HTTPS.

		Date and Time	Toolkit	Logging	
System :: Too	lkit :: Apply Settir	gs			
Apply Car	ncel				
	From: 🔘 I	ocal System			
		Filename:			
	0	ocal Computer			
	$\bigcirc$	Remote Server			
Apply cor	figuration from on	e of the locations. This pro	cedure may disconne	ct active sessions.	

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click Apply Settings icon (displays dialog).



License		Date and Time	Toolkit	Logging	Custom
System :: To	oolkit :: Apply Settings				
Apply C	ancel				
	From: 🖲 Loca	al System			
	Fi •	ilename:			
		al Computer			
	○ Rem	note Server			
Apply c	onfiguration from one of	the locations. This proced	ure may disconne	ct active sessions.	

3. In From menu, select one:

Local System radio button. Enter File Name.

Local Computer radio button. Click Choose File (locate and select the file).

From:	○ Local System
	Local Computer
	Filename Choose File No file chosen
	O Remote Server

**Remote Server** radio button. Enter **URL**, **Username**, and **Password**. (as needed) Select **Download path is absolute path name** checkbox.

O Local System
O Local Computer
Remote Server
URL:
Username:
Password:
Password:
The path in url to be used as absolute path name

#### 4. Click **Apply**.

### **Restore to Factory Default Settings**

The Nodegrid solution offers multiple options to reset the unit back to factory default settings.

If restore to factory default, all configuration files are set to factory default. There is an option to save or clear all log files.



Hard restore is available on the Nodegrid device. To use, locate the RST button on the chassis. Press the RST button down for at least 10 seconds. All configuration files are reset to defaults and log files are cleared.

**NOTE**: Reset to factory default through the RST button requires a minimum ET version of 80814T00. See *About* page for the current version.

The system can also be reset by reformatting the whole system partition. This wipes all existing files and reset the system back to it's shipped state.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click Restore to Factory Default Settings icon (displays dialog).

License		Date and Time	Toolkit		Cus
System :: Too	olkit :: Factory Default	Settings			
RestoreC	ancel				
🗆 Clear al	l Log files				
🗆 Clear al	l Cloud configuration				
Configura	ation will be restored to	the factory default setting	s and system will	reboot.	

(optional) Select Clear all Log files checkbox.

(optional) Select Clear all Cloud Configuration checkbox

3. Click Restore.

## System Configuration Checksum

This creates a checksum baseline of a specific current configuration. Administrators can use this quick tool to periodically verify if the configuration has changed.

License			ate and Time			
System :: Too	lkit :: Syster	n Configuration	Checksum			
Apply Car	ncel					
Checl	ksum Type:	MD5SUM				
		Checksum Action		urrent system configu	uration checksum	
		/1010/1	O Create	a checksum baseline guration	e of the current syste	m
				are current system co I baseline	nfiguration checksu	m
		O SHA256SUM	I			



#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click System Configuration Checksum icon (displays dialog).
- 3. In Checksum Type menu, select one:

#### MD5SUM radio button

In Checksum Action menu, select one:

View current system configuration checksum radio button.

Create a checksum baseline of the current system configuration radio button.

**Compare current system configuration checksum with a baseline** radio button. On **Baseline Reference** drop-down, select one.

Compare current system confi	guration checksum
with a baseline	
Baseline	~
Reference	

#### SHA256SUM radio button

In Checksum Action menu, select one:

View current system configuration checksum radio button.

Create a checksum baseline of the current system configuration radio button.

**Compare current system configuration checksum with a baseline** radio button. On **Baseline Reference** drop-down, select one.

Compare current system with a baseline	m configuration checksum
Baseline	~

4. Click **Apply** (display results).

License	Preferences	Date and Time	Toolkit	Logging	Custom Fields	Dial Up	Scheduler	Remote File System
System :: Toolkit	System :: Toolkit :: System Configuration Checksum							
Finish								
Checksum Type:	SHA256SUM							
Checksum Result:	945f607c8e0	65887712065a20b5ee679	ff469a2ba41e30ea	94119525ab5194f5				
		8f75332afa3bc12e727375	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					
91814df8080afe	e4b873b3c3b2200e	4e503c417c05d559567532	205eec33cf616d /e	etc/identity				
fa92cf84cch9fc	DORIOFdefb71d1ab/	140b0631ee4c020f8f7b430	48465c4b430 (ot	/cvctom data				

- 5. Review the results. If the configurations match, the main result is "Passed". If any change, altered locations are identified.
- 6. When done, click **Finish**.



## System Certificate

A certificate can be loaded to the Nodegrid device from a connected local computer or a remote server. On the dialog, there are two sub-tabs: **Upload Certificate** and **Create CSR**.



**WARNING!** When the certificate is applied, the web server is restarted and active sessions are disconnected.

The protocols FTP, TFTP, SFTP, SCP, HTTP, and HTTPS are supported.

#### **Upload Certificate**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click System Certificate icon (displays dialog).

		Date and Time	Toolkit		Custon
Upload Certificate	Create CS	R			
System :: Toolkit :: Upl	load Certificat	e			
Apply					
From	n: O Local	Computer			
	Remote	te Server			
		URL:			
	User	name:			
	Pass	sword:			
	🗌 The pa	ath in url to be used as a	bsolute path name		
Apply certificate fro disconnect active s		ocations. This procedure	will restart the we	bserver and may	

3. On the **Upload Certificate** sub-tab, *From* menu, select one.

Local System radio button. Enter File Name.

Local Computer radio button. Click Choose File (locate and select the file).

From:	○ Local System
	Local Computer
	Filename Choose File No file chosen
	○ Remote Server

**Remote Server** radio button. Enter **URL**, **Username**, and **Password**. (as needed) Select **Download path is absolute path name** checkbox.

From:	O Local System
	O Local Computer
	Remote Server
	URL:
	Username:
	Password:
	The path in url to be used as absolute path name

#### 4. Click Apply.

#### **Create a Self-Sign Certificate**

A self-sign certificate can be created and applied directly in the Nodegrid.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click **System Certificate** icon (displays dialog).
- 3. On the **Create CSR** sub-tab:

#### Version 5.0



License	Prefe	erences	Date and Time	Toolkit	- Logging	Custom Fields	Dial Up	Scheduler	Remote File
Upload Certif		Create CS							
System :: Too	lkit :: Cre	ate CSR							
Generate CS	R Self-si	ign and apply							
Countr	y Code (C)	):				Self-Sign ce	ertificate		
	State (S)	):							
L	ocality (L)	):							
Organ	ization (O)	):							
Organi	zation Uni (OU)	it ):							
Common I	Name (CN)	):							
Ema	ail Address	s:							
Subject.	Alternativ Names	re s:							

Enter Country Code (C).

Enter State (S) .

Enter Locality (L) .

Enter Organization (O).

Enter Organization Unit (OU) .

Enter Common Name (CN) .

Enter Email Address.

(optional) Subject Alternative Names.

4. Select Self-Sign certificate checkbox and enter Certificate validity (days) value.

Self-Sign certificate	
Certificate validity (days):	365

- 5. Click Self-sign and apply.
- 6. The page reloads after 10 seconds and the certificate is applied.

## **Network Tools**

This provides essential network communication tools ("ping", "traceroute" and "DNS lookup"). Output is displayed in the *Command Output* panel.

# ))(t zpe

License	Preference	s Date and Time	Toolkit	Logging	Custom Fields	Dial Up	Scheduler	Remote File System	
System :: Too	lkit :: Network T	ools							C Rela
Cancel									
Ping or	Trace an IP	Address				Perform a DN	IS Lookup		
	IP Address:					Host	name:		
	Interface:	eth0			~	Lookup			
Ping	aceroute								
Comma	ind Output								
					//				

## Send a Ping

This command-line utility checks if a network device is reachable. The command sends a request over the network to a specific device. If successful, a response from the device is displayed.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click Network Tools icon (displays dialog).
- 3. In the Ping or Traceroute and IP Address menu:

#### Enter IP Address.

On Interface drop-down, select one (eth0, eth1).

- 4. Click Ping.
- 5. Review results in *Command Output* panel.

### Send a Traceroute

A traceroute sends ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol) packets. Every router during the packet transfer is identified. This determines if the routers effectively transferred the data.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click **Network Tools** icon (displays dialog).
- 3. In the Ping or Traceroute and IP Address menu:

#### Enter IP Address.

On Interface drop-down, select one (eth0, eth1).



- 4. Click Traceroute.
- 5. Review results in *Command Output* panel.

## Do a DNS Lookup

This process looks for the DNS record returned from a DNS server. Devices need to translate email addresses and domain names into meaningful numerical addresses.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click Network Tools icon (displays dialog).
- 3. In the Perform a DNS Lookup menu:

Enter Host name.

- 4. Click Lookup.
- 5. Review results in Command Output panel.

## API

## **RESTful API**

The Nodegrid Platform provides an embedded RESTful API. This provides API calls to access and modify the Nodegrid device configuration.

<u>ງ)</u> ( zpe		Responses				
Q Search		> 200 Successful operation				
auth	>	> 401 Authentication failure				
auditing	>					
cluster	>	_				
device	>	POST /Session			~	
network	>	Request samples				
security	>	Payload Python				
system	>	Content type application/json				
tracking	>		Сору	Expand all	Collapse all	
Documentation Powered by ReDoc		<pre>{     "username": "string",     "password": "string",     "poi hum", "string",</pre>				

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click on the **API** icon.

Alternatively, on Banner, User Name drop-down (top right), click API Documentation.



3. On the left panel, click the > arrow to display API calls for that function. Request and Response examples are included.

ງ)ີ( zpe		Nodegrid API (1.0) License: Apache 2.0	
Q Search		Nodegrid RESTfull API	
auth	>		
device	>		
security	>	auth	
cloud	>		
network	>		
auditing	>	Authenticate user and password	POST /Session ~
system	>	Authenticate user and password and return a valid ticket	Request samples
tracking	>	REQUEST BODY SCHEMA: application/son	Payload Python
Documentation Powered b	ry ReDoc	- username string	application/json
		- password string	Copy Expand all Collapse all
			"username": "string", "password": "string"
		Responses	3
		✓ 200 Successful operation	Response samples
		✓ 401 Authentication failure	200 401
			application/json

Example: "get auditing email destination configuration"

<u>ງ)(</u> zpe		
Q Search	GET /auditing/destination/email	~
auditing Y	Request samples	
Get auditing email destination configuration	Cop	
Update auditing email destination configuration	<pre>import requests url = 'https://<nodegrid_ip>/auditing/destination/email' headers = {"ticket": "fea0e1698679c7b530e343dc77f551b2", "Content-Type": "applicatio")</nodegrid_ip></pre>	
Post Test email	<pre>response = requests.get(url, headers=headers, verify=False) print("Response Status Code: ", response.status_code)</pre>	
Get auditing file destination configuration	<pre>print("Response:", response.text) </pre>	2
Put Update auditing file destination configuration	Response samples	
Get auditing SNMP trap destination configuration	Content type application/json	
Update auditing SNMP trap destination configuration	Copy Expand all Collapse al	
Get auditing syslog destination configuration	"destination_email": "string", "password": "string", "confirm_password": "string",	
Put Update auditing syslog destination configuration	<pre>"email_port": "string", "email_server": "string", "username": "string", "start ala": "string"</pre>	



## gRPC

The gRPC framework is supported (default: disabled). To enable gRPC:

1. Go to Security :: .Services.

Active Services							
Enable detection of USB devices							
Enable RPC							
Enable gRPC							
gRPC Port:	4830						

2. In Active Services menu:

Select Enable gRPC checkbox.

Enter **gRPC Port**.

3. Click Save.

gRPC is very scalable, performance-based RPC framework that uses simple service definitions and structured data.

There are four service definitions:

get\_request (APIRequest) - reads data. Returns (APIReply)

post\_request (APIRequest) - executs commands or add an entry. Returns (APIReply)

put\_request (APIRequest) - executs commands that need a selected entry, or update an entry. Returns (APIReply)

```
delete_request (APIRequest) - Deletes existing data sets (or destroys a session. Returns (APIReply)
```

APIRequest expects three arguments:

path - gRPC path to be used.

ticket - authentication ticket for the request.

data - structured data, in json format.

All three arguments follow the same structure as the existing REST API's. See https://<Nodegrid IP>/api\_doc.html for more details.

APIReply returns two arguments:

message - structured data in json format.

status\_code - status\_code as int32 number.

# ))( zpe

## **CLI Examples**

post\_request (Authentication - returns a session ticket)

```
post_request({path: '/v1/Session', data: '{"username": "admin", "password":
"admin"}'}, [...]
```

get\_request (get network connection details)

```
get_request({path: '/v1/network/connections', ticket: 'xxxxxxxxxxx'}, [...]
```

post\_request (add a phone number to the sms whitelist)

post\_request({path: '/v1/system/sms/whitelist', ticket: 'xxxxxxxxxxx', data
 '{"name": "phone1", "phone\_number": "+111111111111"}' }, [...]

put\_request (update an existing value on the sms whitelist)

```
put_request({path: '/v1/system/sms/whitelist/phone1', ticket: 'xxxxxxxxxxx', data
'{"phone_number": "+12222222222"}' }, [...]
```

delete\_request (delete an existing value on the sms whitelist)

delete\_request({path: '/v1/system/sms/whitelist', ticket: 'xxxxxxxxxxx', data
'{"whitelists": [ "phone1", "phone2" ]}' }, [...]

## Diagnostic Data

This tool creates a report on the system status of the Nodegrid device. The contents help invesitage the device functionality. A series of commands output the state of the system, collect various log files, and copies the important configuration files. The output compacted file helps debug the system in case of any error or unexpected behavior.

The generated file is saved:

```
/home/admin/logs/collection_nodegrid_XXXX-XX-XX_XX-XX-X.tar.gz
```

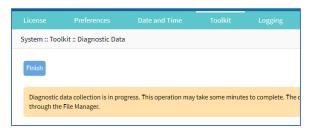
## Step 1 – Initiate Diagnostic Data

This runs the Diagnostic Data tool. The results are accessed with File Manager.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Systems :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click **Diagnostic Data** icon.
- 3. The tool will run the diagnostics.
- 4. When done, click Finish.





## Step 2 – Access the Diagnostic Data Results

(Admin privileges required.)

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Toolkit.
- 2. Click File Manager icon.
- 3. Go to folder: /Home/admin\_home/logs.

•	Download	X Delete & Move Rename L Archive		Upload     Vew Folder				
A /Home/admin_home/logs								
	Туре	Name	0	<b>-</b>				
0	Type	Name	Size	Time				
	iype	collection_nodegrid_2021-10-19_16-23-18.tar.gz	668.95 KB	10/19/2021 9:24:15 AM				

- 4. Locate the tarball and select checkbox.
- 5. Click Download.

Review the file, as needed.

## Logging tab

Data Logging is used to collect information and can also create event notifications. This is archived by defined alert strings (a simple text match or regular expression pattern string) that are evaluated against the data source stream. Events are automatically generated for each match.

Data logging can be enabled for all CLI sessions to be used for inspection and auditing. Data logs are stored locally or remotely (depending on Auditing settings).

License	Preferences	Date and Time	Toolkit	Logging	Custom Fields
System :: Log	ging				
Save					
System	Session Loggin	5			
🗆 Enabl	e session logging				

# ))(t zpe

## **Enable Session Logging**

Details can be modified, as needed.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Logging.
- 2. In System Session Logging menu:

Select Enable session logging checkbox (expands dialog).

		Date and Time	Logging	
System :: Log	ging			
Save				
System	Session Loggin	g		
	e session logging e string detection alerts			

(optional) Select **Enable string detection alerts** checkbox (expands dialog). Enter **Session String** sets, as needed) that sends a notification alert upon occurrence.

License	Preferences	Date and Time	Toolkit	Logging	Custom Fields
System :: Log	gging				
Save					
System	Session Loggin	g			
Enabl	le session logging				
🗹 Enabl	e string detection alerts				
Sess	ion String 1:				
Sess	ion String 2:				
Sess	ion String 3:				
Sess	ion String 4:				
Sess	ion String 5:				

3. Click Save.



# **Custom Fields tab**

Searchable custom fields can be created here. For example, add details not available by default. These custom fields become part of the device details.

License					Custom Fields				
System :: Cu	System :: Custom Fields								C Reload
Add De	elete Edit								
🗆 Fiel	d Name				Field Value				
🗌 exan	nple				aBC				
🗌 test					1				

## **Add Custom Field**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Custom Fields.
- 2. Click Add (displays dialog).

System :: Custom Fields	
Save	
Field Name:	
Field Value:	

- 3. Enter Field Name.
- 4. Enter Field Value.
- 5. Click Save.

## **Edit Custom Field**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Custom Fields.
- 2. Select checkbox next to Field Name.
- 3. Click Edit (displays dialog).
- 4. Make changes.
- 5. Click Save.

### **Delete Custom Field**

#### WebUI Procedure

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



- 1. Go to System :: Custom Fields.
- 2. Select checkbox next to Field Name.
- 3. Click Delete.
- 4. Click Save.

## **Dial-Up tab**

Parameters for dialing to the device and callback users are configured here. Login and PPP connection features are also defined using the drop-down menu.

## Services sub-tab

Services CallBa	ck Users	
System :: Dial Up :: Ser	vices	
Save		
Login Session:	Disabled	~
PPP Connection:	Disabled	~

## **Manage Dial Up Services**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Dial Up :: Services.
- 2. On Login Session drop-down, select one (Enabled, Disabled, Callback).
- 3. On **PPP Connection** drop-down, select one (**Enabled**, **Disabled**, **Callback**).
- 4. Click Save.

## Callback Users sub-tab

Services CallBack Users	
System :: Dial Up :: CallBack Users	
Add Delete	
Callback User	Callback Number
apsjones	1-123-345-4567

## Add Callback User

## WebUI Procedure

1. Go to System :: Dial Up :: Callback Users.



2. Click Add-(displays dialog).

Services	CallBack Users	
System :: Dia	l Up :: CallBack Users	
Save	ncel	
Callt	back User:	
Callback	Number:	

- 3. Enter Callback User.
- 4. Enter Callback Number.
- 5. Click Save.

### **Delete Callback User**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Dial Up :: Callback Users.
- 2. Select checkbox next to Callback User.
- 3. Click **Delete**.

### Edit Callback User

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Dial Up :: Callback Users.
- 2. In Callback User column, click name.

Services	CallBack	Users	
System :: Dial	Up :: CallBa	ick Users :: apsjones	
Save	ncel		
Callb	ack User:	apsjones	
Callback	Number:	1-123-345-4567	

- 3. On the dialog, make changes.
- 4. Click Save.

## Scheduler tab

On this tab, administrators can execute tasks and scripts on a schedule. These can be maintenance tasks or automation tasks that include end devices.



License	Preferences					Scheduler	SMS
System :: Sch	duler						C Reload
Add Dele	te Clone Enable	Disable					
Task	lame	User	Command to E	xecute	Task Description	Task Status	
🗹 test		daemon	Ctl-A		testtest	Enabled	
test2		daemon	Ctl-S		test`12	Disabled	

The tasks must be CLI file (text file with Nodegrid CLI commands) or script file located on the device. The file needs to be accessible and executable by the user.

#### Scheduler Date/Time examples

Factor	Daily Task 00:01 hours	Every Saturday: 23:45 hours	Every Hour on the Hour
Minute	1	45	0
Hour	0	23	*
Day of Month	*	*	*
Month	*	*	*
Day of Week	*	6	*

## Manage Tasks

## Add a Task

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Scheduler.
- 2. Click Add (displays dialog).

#### Version 5.0

# ))(t zpe

License	Preference	s Slots	Date and Time	Toolkit	Logging
System :: Sch	eduler				
Save	icel				
Task					
	Task Name:				
	Task Status:	Enabled			~
Task	Description:				
	User:	daemon			
Comman	d to Execute:				
Executio	on Time				
	Minute:	•			
	Hour:	•			
C	Day of Month:	*			
	Month:	•			
	Day of Week:	•			

3. In the Task menu:

Enter Task Name.

On Task Status drop-down, select one (Enabled, Disabled).

(optional) Enter Task Description.

For **User**, accept default.

Enter **Command to Execute**. (Shell command to be executed. For CLI execution, use this format: usedcli -f <path><cli file name>)

4. In **Execution Time** menu, modify fields as needed.

Minute ('\*', numbers [0-59], ',' separated, '-' separated, '/' separated)

Hour ('\*', numbers [0-23], ',' separated, '-' separated, '/' separated)

Day of month ('\*', numbers [1-31], ',' separated, '-' separated, '/' separated)

Month ('\*', numbers [Jan=1, Feb=2, ..., Dec=12], ',' separated, '-' separated, '/' separated)

# ))( zpe

Day of Week ('\*', numbers, ',', '-', '/' ',', '-', '/'.(Sun=0, Mon=1, ..., Sat=6))

5. Click Save.

## Edit a Task

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Scheduler.
- 2. In the Task Name column, click on the name (displays dialog).
- 3. Make changes as needed.
- 4. Click Save.

## **Delete a Task**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Scheduler.
- 2. Select checkbox next to a task.
- 3. Click Delete
- 4. On confirmation pop-up dialog, click **OK**.

## **Clone a Task**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Scheduler.
- 2. In the Task Name column, click on the name (displays dialog).
- 3. Select checkbox next to a task.
- 4. Click **Clone** (displays dialog).

License			Date and Time	
System :: Sche	eduler			
Save Can	cel			
	Task Name:			
т	ask Source:	test12		

- 5. Enter Task Name.
- 6. Click Save.
- 7. As needed, edit the cloned task.

# ))(t zpe

## Enable/Disable a Task

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to System :: Scheduler.
- 2. In the *Task Name* column, click on the name (displays dialog).
- 3. Select checkbox next to a task.
- 4. Click Enable (to enable task).
- 5. Click **Disable** (to disable task).

## SMS tab (only with installed cellular module)

**NOTE**: This function is only available on devices on devices with the cellular module installed: Services Router, Bold SR, Gate SR, and Link SR (loaded with M2-Card EM7565 M2/wireless modem).

Actions can be run remotely with an SMS incoming message. The SMS message authentication must be valid. Only allowed actions are executed.

By default, Enable Actions via incoming SMS is disabled. When enabled in the default state (no password), the device accepts SMS-triggered actions from all phone numbers. MAC address of ETH0 is the default password.

**NOTE**: The SMS option requires that the SIM card and plan to be SMS-enabled. This can be checked with the service provider. It is recommended to check the costs for this service, as some actions can respond with multiple SMS.

## SMS Settings sub-tab

Action	Data type	Description
Enable Actions via incoming SMS	String	Disabled by default.
Allowed SMS Action		Actions allowed to be triggered by SMS.
apn - configure temporary APN	True/False	Configure a temporary APN.
simswap - temporary swap SIM card	True/False	Triggers a SIM card failover.
connect and disconnect - on/off data connection	True/False	Triggers a modem to connect or disconnect.
mstatus - request wireless modem status	True/False	Returns current modem status.
reset - reset wireless modem	True/False	Triggers a modem reset.

### SMS Settings





Action	Data type	Description
info - request information about Nodegrid	True/False	Returns About information.
factorydefault - factory default Nodegrid	True/False	Factory default of the Nodegrid device is triggered.
reboot - reboot Nodegrid	True/False	Triggers device reboot.

## **Enable Incoming SMS Actions**

#### WebUI Procedure

1. Go to System :: SMS :: Settings.

)(î n	odeg	rid®				a <b>199</b>	<b>L</b>	dmin@GateSR.localdomain	🗕 💿 Help	එ Logout
	<b>R</b> Tracking	<b>رک</b> System	Network	Construction Managed Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	교열 Dashboard		
License	Preferen	ces l	Date and Time	Toolkit Lo	ogging	Custom Fields	Dial Up	Scheduler	SMS	I/O Ports
Save	Whitelist MS :: Settings ctions Setti	ngs								C Reload
	ble Actions via ir		vord:							
SMS f	ormat: <passwo< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></passwo<>									

- 2. In SMS Actions Settings menu, select Enable Actions via Incoming SMS checkbox.
- 3. Enter Password.
- 4. Click Save.

## **CLI Examples: SMS Actions and Messages**

The format of SMS actions and subsequent response is given in the list below. Some actions may not require a response.

Format

```
Message format: < password >;< action >;< argument >;
    Response: <response>;
```

connect (try to power on data connection)

```
< password >;connect;
Connect action started;
```

disconnect (drop current data connection)

```
< password >;disconnect;
Disconnect action started;
```

reset (reset wireless modem)

```
< password >;reset;
Modem Reset will start soon;
```

apn (configure temporary APN)

```
< password >;apn;<new apn>;
```

mstatus (request modem status)

```
< password >;mstatus;
Service:< LTE|WCDMA >;RSSI:< value dbm >;SIM:< sim number in use >;State:< status
>;APN:< apn in use >;IP addr:< ip address when connected >
```

simswap (swap sim card temporary)

```
< password >;simswap;<timeout for sim to register in secs. max 180>;
Modem will reset to swap sim;
```

info (request device information)

```
< password >;info;
Model: < Nodegrid model >; Serial Number: < Nodegrid serial number >; Version: <
firmware version >;
```

reboot (reboot Nodegrid device)

```
< password >;reboot;
Nodegrid will reboot soon;
```

factorydefault (restore Nodegrid configuration to factory default)

```
< password >;factorydefault;
Nodegrid will restore configuration to factory default and reboot;
```

# ))(t zpe

## Whitelist sub-tab

On the table, administrators can add, delete, or change phone numbers which can send SMS action triggers. Requests from all other phone numbers are ignored.

### **SMS Whitelist**

Setting	Data type	Description
Name	String	Name
Phone Number	Phone Number	Allowed Phone Number

NOTE: If the whitelist table is empty then requests from all phone numbers are accepted.

## **Add Entry to Whitelist**

### WebUI Procedure

1. Go to System :: SMS :: Whitelist.

Ç 📑	. 6	*	A (			
oystem neth				iting Dashboard		
ces Date and T	ïme Toolkit	Logging C	ustom Fields	Dial Up Scheduler	SMS	I/O Ports
						C Reload
1	nces Date and T	ices Date and Time Toolkit	nces Date and Time Toolkit Logging Cr	ices Date and Time Toolkit Logging Custom Fields	nces Date and Time Toolkit Logging Custom Fields Dial Up Scheduler	nces Date and Time Toolkit Logging Custom Fields Dial Up Scheduler SMS

- 2. Click Add (displays dialog).
- 3. Enter Name.
- 4. Enter Phone Number.
- 5. Click Save.

# I/O Ports tab (only with GPIO)

**NOTE**: This tab is displayed only if the Nodegrid device is equipped with GPIO (Digital I/O ports).

This sets the configuration of the state of digital outputs and DIO0/DIO1 as input or output. When DIO0/DIO1 is configured as output, the state can be set to Low or High.

))(t z	zpe
--------	-----

ŋ́(t n	odeg	rid®				م	<b>≜</b> a	dmin@GateSR.localdomai	n <b>- 0</b> ⊦	lelp <b>ෆ්</b> Logout
	& Tracking	ر <b>ت</b> System	Network	Managed Devi	ces Cluster	Security	Auditing	୍ଲାର୍ଥ୍ର Dashboard		
License	Preferenc	ces Date	and Time	Toolkit	Logging	Custom Fields	Dial Up	Scheduler	SMS	I/O Ports
System :: I/C	) Ports									C Reload
Save										
Digital	Output OU	ТО								
		Description:	lab's door							
		State:	Low							\$
Alarm	Relay									
		Description:	my relay							
		State:	Open							
			Close							
			Power Sector	ource Control						

# **Network Section**

Administrators can configure and adjust all network-related settings, including network configuration, LTE, WiFi interfaces, bounding, and VLAN details.

**NOTE**: Nodegrid currently supports the FRRouting suite. For more information, please see http://docs.frrouting.org/en/latest/

## **Settings tab**

Administrators can define the units host and domain name, configure Network Failover between multiple interfaces, enable IP Forwarding and configure a loopback address.

## Hostname and Domain Name

The device hostname and domain name is defined in the *Network Settings* menu. Appropriate values for both settings must be provided.

## **Network Failover**

The network failover option allows administrators to automatically failover between two and three different network interfaces. Each failover setting can be defined.



## **Failover Settings**

Setting	Options	Description
Primary Connection	Interfaces	List of all available network interfaces. One must be selected.
Secondary Connection - Tertiary Connection	Interfaces	List of all available network interfaces. One must be selected.
Trigger	Unreachable Primary Connection IPv4 Default GatewayUnreachable IP address	Based on the setting, the System will check availability of the default gateway or a specified address.
Number of failed retries to failover	Number	Number of failed attempts to reach the trigger address. This is used to trigger a failover.
Number of successful retries to recover	Number	Number of successful tries to reach the trigger address. This is used to trigger a fallback.
Interval between retries (seconds)	Number	Amount of time to wait between tries.

The Nodegrid Platform supports configuration of a Dynamic DNS for failover interfaces.

## **Network Failover for Wireless Connections**

Additional failover options are available for wireless connections:

Failover by Signal Strength (triggered when signal strength drops below a user-defined percentage).

Failover by Signal Strength	
Signal Strength (%):	

Failover by Data Usage (triggered when one of these limits are met):

Carrier Limit

Warning Limit

Custom (Data Usage Limit (MB))

🛃 Failover by Data Usage	
Threshold:	Carrier Limit (Configured on Data Usage Monitoring)
	O Warning Limit (Configured on Data Usage Monitoring)
	Custom
	Data Usage Limit (MB):

Failover by Schedule (triggered on a set schedule).



Schedule:	00***
Time to Failback (hours):	8

**NOTE**: See "Scheduler Date and Time examples" for schedule format examples.

## IPv4 and IPv6 Profile

## **IP Forwarding**

IP Forwarding can route network traffic between network interfaces. Behavior of the routing traffic can be further adjusted with firewall settings. IP Forwarding is enabled independently for IPv4 and IPv6.

## **Loopback Address**

If required, a Loopback address can be configured for IPv4 and IPv6. The address is assigned a bitmask of /32 (IPv4) or /128 (IPv6).

## **Reverse Path Filtering**

With Reverse Path Filtering, administrators can configure device behavior. By default, this is set to Strict Mode (recommended for most environments with protection against some forms of DDoS attacks). This value may need to be changed because of dynamic routing protocols or other network setup scenarios.

#### **Reverse Path Filtering Options**

Value	Description
Disabled	No source address validation is performed.
Strict Mode	Each incoming packet is tested against the routing table and if the interface represents the best return path. If the packet cannot be routed or is not the best return path. it is dropped.
Loose Mode	Each incoming packet is tested only against the route table. If the packet cannot be routed it gets dropped. This allows for asymmetric routing scenarios.

## **Multiple Routing Tables**

Nodegrid supports multiple routing tables to assign specific routing details to specific network interfaces or IP clients. This is enabled by default. Administrators can disable, if required.

## **Connections tab**

Administrators can edit, add, and delete existing network configurations. All existing physical interfaces are automatically added. The following physical interfaces exist, depending on the model.



## **Physical Interfaces**

Interface	Model	Physical interface
ETH0	all	eth0
ETH1	Nodegrid Serial Consoles, Services Router	eth1
BACKPLANE0	Nodegrid Bold SR, Services Router, Gate SR	Backplane0 provides the connection to switch ports and sfp0 (Nodegrid Services Router).
BACKPLANE1	Nodegrid Services Router, Gate SR	Backplane1 provides the connection to sfp1.
SFP0	Nodegrid Gate SR	sfp0
SFP1	Nodegrid Gate SR	sfp1
hotspot	all	Interface is bound to wireless adapter (if available).

The administrator can define settings for each interface.

## Physical Interface Settings

Settings	Description
Set as Primary Connection	Defines the interface as the primary connection. (Only one interface can be the primary.)
Enable LLDP advertising and reception through this connection	Enables LLDP advertisement through the interface.
(IPv4/IPv6) mode	Defines the IP mode for the interface, available are: No (IPv4/IPv6) Address DHCP (IPv4)Address Auto Configuration (IPv6) Stateful DHC (IPv6) Static (IPv4/IPv6)
(IPv4/IPv6) address	Defines a static IP address, if the mode is set to static.
(IPv4/IPv6) bitmask	Defines a static IP bitmask, if the mode is set to static.
(IPv4/IPv6) gateway	(optional) Defines a static IP gateway, if the mode is set to static.
(IPv4/IPv6) DNS Server	(optional) Defines a DNS Server for this connection Defines a static IP gateway, if mode is set to static.
(IPv4/IPv6) DNS Search	Defines a domain name for DNS lookups.

Additional interfaces can be defined to the existing physical interfaces – for more advanced configuration options.



#### Supported Interface Types

Interface	Description
Bonding	Allows bonding of multiple interfaces for Failover purposes.
Ethernet	Allows configuration of additional physical interfaces.
Mobile Broadband GSM	Allows configuration of available LTE modem connections.
VLAN	(optional) Allows configuration of VLAN interfaces (bound to physical interfaces).
WiFi	(optional) Allows configuration of WiFi interfaces, as WIFI client or hotspot. By default, a WiFi interface already exists with the name "hotspot".
Bridge	Allows creation of a bridge interface of one or multiple physical interfaces.

## **Bonding Interfaces**

With bonding interfaces, the system can bond two physical network interfaces to one interface. All physical interfaces in the bond act as one interface. This allows for an active failover between the two interfaces if an interface physical connection is interrupted.

The built-in Network Failover can do the same. The main difference is that the built-in feature Network Failover works on the IP layer for more functionality. A bonding interface works on the link layer.

**NOTE**: The build function Network Failover and Bonding can be combined.

For the bonding interface, the administrator can define normal network settings (IP address, bitmask, and other settings).

### Bonding Interface Options

Setting	Description
Primary Interface	Primary network interface.
Secondary Interface	Secondary network interface.



Setting	Description
Bonding Mode	<ul> <li>Allows use of the Bond mode. Valid options are:</li> <li>(0) Round Robin (Packets transmitted in sequential order from first available slave through the last).</li> <li>(1) Active Backup (Only one slave in the bond is active. A different slave becomes active if, and only if, the active slave fails.)</li> <li>(2) Balance XOR (Transmit based on the selected transmit hash policy.)</li> <li>(3) Broadcast (Transmits everything on all slave interfaces. This mode provides fault tolerances.)</li> <li>(4) 802.3ad/LACP (IEEE 802.3ad Dynamic link aggregation. Creates aggregation groups that share the same speed and duplex settings. Utilizes all slaves in the active aggregator according to the 802.3ad specification. Slave selection for outgoing traffic is done according to the transmit hash policy.)</li> <li>(5) Balance TLB (Adaptive transmit load balancing: channel bonding that does not require any special switch support. Outgoing traffic is distributed according to the current load (computed relative to the speed) on each slave. Incoming traffic is received by the current slave.)</li> <li>(6) Balance ALB (Adaptive load balancing. Includes balance-tlb plus receive load balancing (rlb) for IPV4 traffic. Does not require any special switch support. Receive load balancing is achieved by ARP negotiation.)</li> </ul>
Link Monitoring	Allows Link monitoring mode to be specified. Options are: MII, ARP.
Monitoring Frequency (ms)	Allows defining a link-state monitoring frequency in ms for the interfaces. Value is only valid for MII mode.
Link Up delay (ms)	Allows defining a delay in ms before an interface is brought up after a link is detected. Value is only valid for MII mode.
Link Down delay (ms)	Allows defining a delay in ms before an interface is brought down after link down is detected. Value is only valid for MII mode.
ARP target	Allows defining an IP target which will be used to send ARP monitoring requests to. ARP mode value must be defined.
ARP validate	Allows defining which interfaces to use for the ARP validation. Options: None, Active, Backup, All
Bond Fail-over-MAC policy	Allows the definition of the MAC address failover policy. Options are: Primary Interface, Current Active Interface, Follow Active Interface.
Primary Interface	Primary network interface.

## **Ethernet Interfaces**

Additional Ethernet interfaces can be added and configured when an additional physical interface is added. This can occur during a Nodegrid Manager installation, where the System might have more than two interfaces to better support network separation.



## Mobile Broadband GSM Interface

Mobile Broadband interfaces can be configured when a mobile broadband modem is available to the device. The Nodegrid SR family (NSR, GSR, BSR, and LSR) support built-in modems available as optional add-ons. For all other units, external modems can be used.

The created interfaces allow the system to establish an Internet connection most used for failover options. Users and remote systems can directly access the device through a mobile connection (if supported by the ISP).

**NOTE**: Built-in modems support Active-Passive SIM failover. SIM-2 settings are only supported for the built-in modems.

Setting	Description
SIM-1 User name	User name to unlock the SIM.
SIM-1 Password	Password to unlock the SIM.
SIM-1 Access Point Name (APN)	Access Point Name.
SIM-1 Personal Identification Number (PIN)	PIN to unlock the SIM.
Enable Second SIM card	(optional) Allows a 2nd SIM card to be configured.
Active SIM card	Allows definition of the primary SIM card to be used.
SIM-2 User name	User name to unlock the SIM.
SIM-2 Password	Password to unlock the SIM.
SIM-2 Access Point Name (APN)	Access Point Name.
SIM-2 Personal Identification Number (PIN)	PIN to unlock the SIM.
MTU	Allows the MTU value to be set (in bytes). Field can be set to 'auto' (equal to 1500 bytes).

## Mobile Broadband GSM Interface Options

**NOTE**: An APN (provided by the carrier) is required for all cellular connections. For more information on APNs, please see <u>https://support.zpesystems.com/portal/kb/articles/what-is-the-apn-for-my-nsr-or-bsr-to-connect-to-4g-lte</u>.

## Enable Data Usage Monitoring

Data Usage Monitoring can be enabled to trigger an alarm once your mobile data usage has reached a set percentage of your monthly allowance.

#### WebUI Procedure

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.

# ))(t zpe

- 1. Go to Network :: Connections.
- 2. Click on the Mobile Broadband GSM connection to be enabled for Data Usage Monitoring.
- 3. Select Enable Data Usage Monitoring checkbox.
- 4. Enter these details:

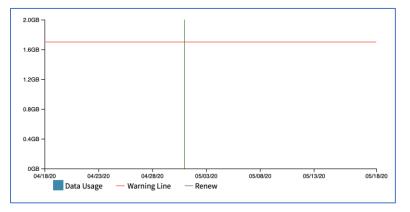
SIM-1 Data Limit Value (GB) (monthly data limit).

SIM-1 Data Warning (%) (percentage that triggers an alarm).

SIM-1 Renew Day (day to reset accumulated data).

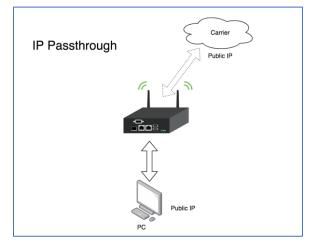
5. Click Save.

A graph is displayed with lines set based on the parameters entered.



## Enable IP Passthrough

IP Passthrough allows a connected device to be reachable via a public IP.



- 1. Go to Network :: Connections.
- 2. Click on the Mobile Broadband GSM connection to be enabled for IP Passthrough.
- 3. Select Enable IP Passthrough checkbox.
- 4. On the **Ethernet Connection** drop-down, select one.

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



🕗 Enable IP Passthrough		
Ethernet Connection:	ETHO	0
MAC Address:		
Port Intercepts:		

- 5. For **MAC Address**, enter the target device MAC address. If blank, the system uses DHCP to get the target device.
- 6. For **Port Intercepts**, enter any ports that should NOT pass through the Nodegrid device.
- 7. Click Save.

## VLAN Interface

VLAN Interfaces can natively tag network traffic with a specific VLAN ID. The VLAN Interface needs to be created. The VLAN interface has the same settings as any other network interface and behaves the same way. It is bound to a specific physical interface with an administrator-defined VLAN ID.

## WiFi Interface

The System support a Nodegrid device as a WiFi client or access point. A compatible WiFi module must be installed.

### WiFi Access Point

By default, a hotspot interface is defined which configures the device as an access point (if a WiFi module is present).

To use the Nodegrid as an Access Point, update the values.

### WiFi Client

To use the device as a WiFi client, the existing hotspot connection must be disabled.

- 1. Go to the settings and disable the **Connect Automatically** option.
- 2. Ensure that the hotspot interface is down.
- 3. The system creates a new WiFi interface to allow the device to act as a client.

### **WIFI Settings**

The WiFi configuration security configuration options support No Security or WPA2 Personal.

#### **WiFi Specific Settings**

Setting	Description
WiFi SSID	SSID to be used.
WiFi BSSID	MAC address of the Access Point to be used.



Hidden Network	When enabled, the SSID will not be broadcasted.
WiFi Security	Allows security to be set up (No Security, WPA2 Personal).
WPA shared key	If WPA2 Personal is defined as security, a shared key can be defined.

## Bridge Interface

With Bridge Interfaces, the System can create a virtual switch that crosses one or more interfaces. The switch is completely transparent to the network interfaces and does not require additional setup. The most common use for a bridge network is easy network access for any running NFV (outside as well as the Nodegrid System).

Bridge network interfaces use the same network configuration options as all Ethernet interfaces.

Setting	Description
Bridge Interfaces	Comma-separated list of physical interfaces.
Enable Spanning Tree Protocol	Enable the Spanning Tree Protocol for the interface.
Hello Time (sec)	Number of seconds a HELLO packet is sent (used when Spanning Tree is enabled).
Forward Delay (sec)	Defines a packet forward delay (used when Spanning Tree is enabled).
Max Age (sec)	Defines maximum age for packages (used when Spanning Tree is enabled).

### Bridge Network Options

## Analog Modem Interface

With the analog modem interface, administrators can configure an existing analog modem and required PPP connection details. A supported analog modem must be connected to the Nodegrid System.

### **Analog Modem Options**

Setting	Description
Status	Connection status (enabled, disabled).
Device Name	Name of detected modem (i.e., tty, USB0).
Speed	Serial connection speed to the modem.
PPP Dial-Out Phone Number	
Init Chat	Define a specific AT init string (if required).



Version 5.0

Setting	Description
PPP Idle Timeout (sec)	Define the connection idle timeout after which the connection is automatically disconnected. 0 sec = connection does not get automatically disconnected.
PPP IPv4/IPv6Address	Definition of IPv4 addresses for the PPP connection. Options are: No Address Local Configuration (Configuration of a local and remote IP address). Accept Configuration from Remote Peer.
PPP Authentication	Definition of PPP authentication options. Possible options are: None By Local System (allows a definition of authentication protocol of PAP, CHAP, EAP) By Remote Peer (allows a definition of a remote username and password)

## **Static Routes tab**

Administrators can define and manage static routes. Routes can be created for IPv4 and IPv6, assigned to specific network interfaces.

## **Static Route Options**

Setting	Description
Connection	Selection of the network connection associated with the route.
Туре	Definition of IP type. Options are: IPv4,IPv6.
Destination IP	Definition of the destination IP or network.
Destination BitMask	Definition of the associated bitmask (xxx.xxx.xxx or xx Example: 255.255.255.0 24
Gateway IP	Definition of the gateway address.
Metric	Definition of the routing metric value. Normal routes have a default value: 100.

## Hosts tab

Administrators can configure and manage manual hostname definitions (equivalent to entries in the host's file).

### Manual Hostname Options

Setting	Description
IP Address	Target hosts IP address. (IPv4 and IPv6 formats are supported.)
Hostname	Hostname of the target.



Setting	Description
Alias	Additional hostname aliases.

## **DHCP Server tab**

The DHCP server for target devices can be configured and managed. By default, the DHCP server is not configured or active. When a DHCP scope is defined, the system serves IP addresses to all target devices connected to the interface and which match the general DHCP scope.

Configuration is a two-step process. First, the general DHCP scope and configuration is configured and created. Then, IP address ranges (Network Range) are defined to be used as server IP addresses and as IP address reservations for specific hosts.

Setting	Description
SubNet	IP address subnet network are used. Must match the settings of a configured interface.
Netmask	Network mask for the defined subnet – format: xxx.xxx.xxx
Domain	Domain name for the scope.
Domain Name Servers (DNS)	DNS servers for the scope.
Router IP	Default gateway for the scope.
Network Range - IP Address Start	First IP address to be severed.
Network Range - IP Address End	Last IP address to be served.
Hosts - Hostname	Hostname for IP address reservation.
Hosts - HW Address	MAC address to which an IP address reservation applies
Hosts - IP Address	IP address assigned to specific host matching the defined MAC address.

## **DHCP Server Options**

## **Network Switch Configuration**

Users can configure the built-in network switch. Supported functions include enable/disable individual ports, as well as creation of tagged (access) and untagged (trunk) ports.

Each card that provides network connectivity (Backplane 0/1 and SFP0/1) are directly connected to the switch. By default, the interfaces Backplane0/1 and SFP0/1 are active. By default, these can provide or consume ZTP, PXE and DHCP requests. By default, all other network interfaces are disabled.

All ports belong to VLAN1 and provide direct communication between enabled interfaces, except Backplane1 and SFP1 (which belong to VLAN2).





## Switch Interfaces

These provide an overview of all switch ports, current status, and allow enable/disable. Current VLAN associates (tagged and untagged) are shown (and Port VLAN IDs can be configured.

The Port VLAN ID is assigned to all incoming untagged packets. Then, the Port VLAN ID is used to forward packets to other ports which match that VLAN ID.

The switch port interface identifies the VLAN interfaces to which a port belongs. For most situations, a port is either an untagged port (equivalent to an access port) or a tagged port (equivalent to a trunk port).

## VLAN Configuration

Administrators can create, delete, and manage VLAN's. Ports can be assigned, as needed. By default, VLAN 1 and VLAN 2 exist. By default, all ports belong to VLAN 1 except BACKPLANE1 and SFP1 which belong by default to VLAN 2.

## ACL

With the ACL (access control list) option, user can add, delete, and edit custom ACL rules for each interface. The main table displays details: Name, Interfaces, Direction, and number of rules.

## **Untagged/Access Ports**

To assign a port to a specific VLAN as an untagged or access port, enable the port and change the PORT VLAN ID to the desired VLAN. The port is automatically assigned to VLAN and untagged port.

NOTE: the VLAN must exist before the port can be assigned.

## Tagged/Trunk Ports

Tagged ports accept incoming packets with VLAN tags. Tagged ports will accept any packet which belongs to an assigned VLAN. They are used to create a trunk connection between multiple switches. To assign a port as a tagged port, a minimum of one VLAN must be added to a port as tagged VLAN. This can be done on the VLAN configuration. The Port VLAN ID for a tagged port should match one of the assigned VLANs or be blank. In this case, no untagged traffic is accepted by the port.

NOTE: the VLAN must exist before the port can be assigned.

## **Backplane Ports**

Backplane settings control the switch interfaces directly exposed to the Nodegrid Platform. For the Nodegrid to communicate with any existing switch ports or VLANs, at least one of the backplane interfaces must be part of the specific VLAN. The backplane settings display the current VLAN associations. The Port VLAN IDs can be set for the backplane interfaces.

## LAG

Link aggregation allows combination of multiple network connections in parallel. This increases throughput beyond what a single connection sustains. Redundancy occurs in the event one of the links fails.

#### Version 5.0

# j)(t zpe

# SSL VPN tab

Multiple VPN options are supported. This includes VPN client and server options plus IPsec configurations for host to host, site to site, and others. Also available is IPsec with asymmetric PSL auth support for IKEv2 tunnel. This allows the System to act as VPN servers or clients.

## **VPN SSL**

Nodegrid supports a wide variety of SSL configuration options. The System can act as either SSL client or SSL server, as needed by the customer configuration and security requirements.

## **VPN Client**

The VPN client configuration settings are generally used for failover scenarios. This is when a main secure connection fails over to a less secure connection type. The VPN tunnel is used to secure traffic. When the Nodegrid device is configured as an VPN client, it is bound to a network interface (optional) and the VPN tunnel is automatically established when the bounded interface starts. Multiple client configurations can be added that support different connection and interface details.

**NOTE**: Depending on the configuration, multiple files are required and must be available in the /etc/openvpn/CA folder.

Setting	Description
Name	Connection name.
Network Connection	Network interface the tunnel is bound.
Gateway IP Address	IP address or FQDN of the VPN server.
Gateway TCP Port	TCP port for the connection (default: 1194).
Connection Protocol	Supported connection protocols. Options: UTP, TCP.
Tunnel MTU	MTU size for the tunnel interface.
HMAC/Message Digest Alg	Selected HMAC connection algorithm from a list.
Cipher Alg	Selected connection cipher algorithm from a list.
Use LZO data compress Algorithm	If enabled, supports data compression.
Authentication Method	User authentication method. Options: TLS, Static Key, Password, Password plus TLS.
TLS - CA Certificate	CA certificate used by the SSL server.
TLS - Client Certificate	The certificate recognized by the SSL server.

## **VPN Client Options**



Setting	Description
TLS - Client Private Key	Client certificates private key.
Static Key - Secret	Static key for the Secret.
Static Key - Local Endpoint (Local IP)	Local IP address for the VPN connection.
Static Key - Remote Endpoint (Remote IP)	Remote IP address for the VPN connection.
Password - Username	Connection username.
Password - Password	Connection password.
Password - CA Certificate	CA certificate file used by the SSL server.
Password plus TLS - Username	Connection username.
Password plus TLS - Password	Connection password.
Password plus TLS - CA Certificate	CA certificate file used by the SSL server.
Password plus TLS - Client Certificate	Client certificate recognized by the SSL server.
Password plus TLS - Client Private Key	Client certificates private key.

## **VPN Server**

Nodegrid can be configured as a VPN server. By default, this is disabled. When configured as a VPN server and started, the *SSL Server Status* page provides an overview of the general server status and connected clients.

**NOTE**: Depending on the configuration, multiple files are required and must be available in the /etc/openvpn/CA folder.

### **VPN Server Options**

Setting	Description
Status	After configured, must be enabled to start the server (default: disabled).
Listen IP address	Listening IP address. If defined, the server only responds to client requests coming in on this interface.



Version 5.0

Setting	Description
Listen Port number	Listening port for incoming connections (default: 1194).
Protocol	Protocol to be used. Options: UDP, TCP.
Tunnel MTU	MTU used for the tunnel (default: 1500).
Number of Concurrent Tunnels	Total amount of concurrent SSL client sessions (default: 256).
IP Address	IP address settings for the tunnel. Options: Network, Point to Point, Point To Point IPv6.
IP Address - Network - IPv4 Tunnel(NetAddr Netmask)	IPv4 network address and network mask for the tunnel.
IP Address - Network - IPv6 Tunnel(NetAddr/Bitmask):	IPv4 network address and network mask for the tunnel.
IP Address - Point-to-Point - Local Endpoint (Local IP)	Local IPv4 IP address for Point-to-Point connection.
IP Address - Point-to-Point - Remote Endpoint (Remote IP)	Remote IPv4 IP address for Point-to-Point connection.
IP Address - Point-to-Point IPv6 - Local Endpoint (Local IP)	Local IPv6 IP address for Point-to-Point connection.
IP Address - Point-to-Point IPv6 - Remote Endpoint (Remote IP)	Remote IPv6 IP address for Point-to-Point connection.
Authentication Method	Authentication method. Options: TLS, Static Key, Password, Password plus TLS.
TLS - CA Certificate	CA certificate TLS.
TLS - Server Certificate	Server certificate TLS.
TLS - Server Key	Private TLS key of the server certificate.
TLS - Diffie Hellman	Diffie Hellman TLS.
Static Key - Secret	Secret static key.
Static Key - Diffie Hellman	Diffie Hellman static key.
Password - CA Certificate	CA certificate to use.
Password - Server Certificate	Password for server certificate to use.
Password - Server Key	Password for server key.

# ))(t zpe

Setting	Description
Password - Diffie Hellman	Diffie Hellman password,
Password plus TLS - CA Certificate	CA certificate Password plus TLS.
Password plus TLS- Server Certificate	Server certificate Password plus TLS.
Password plus TLS- Server Key	Private server key Password plus TLS.
Password plus TLS- Diffie Hellman	Diffie Hellman Password plus TLS.
HMAC/Message Digest	HMAC connection algorithm selected from a list.
Cipher	Connection cipher algorithm selected from a list.
Min TLS version	Connection TLS minimum version. Options: None, TLS 1.0, TLS 1.1, TLS 1.2, TLS 1.3.
Use LZO data compress Algorithm	If enabled, all tunnel traffic is compressed.
Redirect Gateway (Force all client generated traffic through the tunnel)	If enabled, all traffic from a client is forced through the tunnel.

## **IPsec tab**

The Nodegrid solution supports the IPsec tunnel configuration with a variety of options for host-to-host, host-to-site, site-to-site and road warrior settings. The Nodegrid node is directly exposed to the Internet. It is strongly recommended the device be secured. Built-in features include:

- Firewall configuration
- Enable Fail-2-Ban
- Change all default passwords with strong passwords
- Disable services not required

## **Overview**

## **Authentication Methods**

Multiple authentication methods are available. Some are simple (Pre-Shared keys and RSA keys) but with limited flexibility. Others require more initial configuration and setup which offers flexibility and consistency.

## **Pre-shared Keys**

Pre-shared Keys provide the simplest and least secure method to secure an IPsec connection. This is a combination of characters that represent a secret. Both nodes must share the same secret. Nodegrid supports pre-shared keys with a minimum length of 32 characters. The maximum length is much higher. Due to compatibility reasons with other vendors, Nodegrid uses a 64-bit length for the examples. The longer the pre-shared key is, the more secure it is.

Confidential



## **RSA Keys**

RSA Keys or Raw RSA keys are commonly used for static configurations between single or a few hosts. The nodes are manually configured with each other's RSA keys.

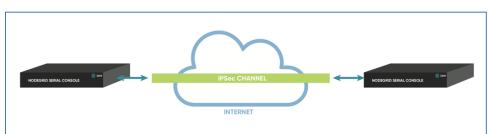
#### X.509 Certificates

Typically, X.509 Certificate authentications are used for larger deployments with a few to many nodes. The RSA keys of the individual nodes are signed by a central Certificate Authority (CA). The Certificate Authority maintains the trust relationship between the nodes. As needed, specific nodes can include revocation of trust. Nodegrid supports both public and private CA's. As needed, the Nodegrid Platform can host and manage its own Certificate Authority for IPsec communication.

## **Connection Scenarios**

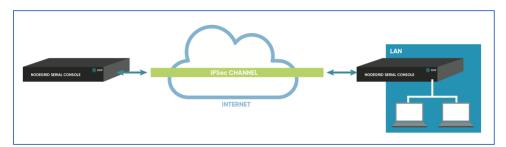
IPsec supports many connection scenarios, from the basic one-to-one nodes and the more complex one-to-many nodes. Communication can be limited to the directly involved nodes. If needed, communication can be expanded to the networks access table behind the nodes. Examples are provided for some of the most common scenarios.

#### Host-to-Host



Host-to-Host communication is two nodes directly connected with a VPN tunnel. The communication is limited to direct communication between them. None of the packages are routed or forwarded. This is a point-to-point communication tunnel between two nodes.

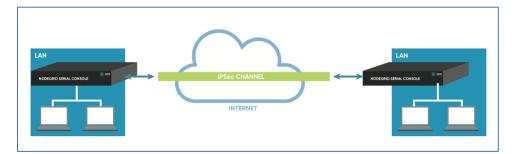
#### Host-to-Site



With host-to-Site, one node establishes a VPN tunnel to a second node. Communication is limited on one site to the specific node; and on the other side, limited to all devices in a range of subnet accessible by the second node.

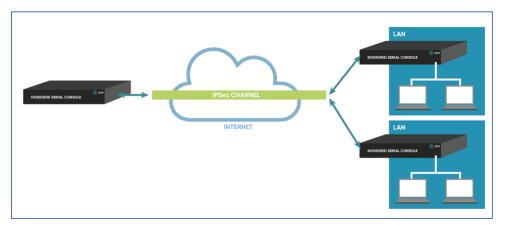


### Site-to-Site



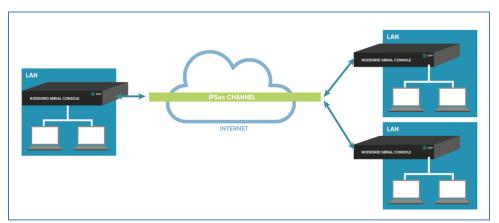
In site-to-site, the tunnel is established between two nodes. Communication can specify the subnet on both sides. This allows communication between devices on either side of the connection.

### Host-to-Multi-Site



Host-to-multi-site communication is created with individual VPN connections. This is done between hosts or with specific multi-site configurations (which greatly improves scalability). Multiple nodes can connect to the same node. A typical use would be remote offices with a VPN connection to the main office. This would limit communications to the one node and devices on specified subnets in the remote locations.

### Site-to-Multi-Site



Site-to-multi-site is most common for enterprise VPN setups. Similar to host-to-multi-site, communication is allowed to the specific subnet on either side. The West node would have access



to all specified subnet on any of the sites. The remote sites only can access the subnet exposed by the West node.

### Keys and Certificates

	Host to Host	Host to Site	Site to Site	Host to Multi- Site	Site to Multi-Host
Pre-shared Keys	Possible	Possible	Possible	Possible	Possible
RSA Key	Recommended	Recommended	Recommended	Possible	Possible
X.509 Certificates	Recommended	Recommended	Recommended	Recommended	Recommended

### **Keys and Certificates**

# **IPsec Configuration Process**

These are the general configuration steps to configure the desired connection.

- 1. To prepare the Nodegrid, see <u>How to Prepare a Nodegrid Node for IPsec</u>
- 2. Ensure that one of the authentication methods is prepared:

How to create Pre-shared Keys for IPsec

How to create RSA Keys for IPsec

How to Create Certificates for IPsec

**NOTE**: For Production environments, it is recommended to use RSA Keys or Certificate Authentication. For a test environment, Pre-Shared Keys are easy to set up.

3. Create an IPsec configuration file. Configuration examples can be found here:

### **Pre-Shared Keys**

How to Configure IPsec Host to Host Tunnel with Pre-Shared Key

How to configure IPsec Host to Site tunnel with Pre-Shared Key

How to Configure IPsec Site to Site Tunnel with Pre-Shared Key

### **RSA Keys**

How to Configure IPsec Host to Host Tunnel with RSA Keys

How to Configure IPsec Host to Site tunnel with RSA Keys

How to Configure IPsec Site to Site Tunnel with RSA Keys

### Certificates

How to Configure IPsec Host to Host Tunnel with Certificate

How to Configure IPsec Host to Site Tunnel with Certificate



### How to Configure IPsec Site to Site Tunnel with Certificate

- 4. As required, distribute and exchange configuration files and keys to all nodes
- 5. Test the connection.

For more detailed instruction on how to use IPsec with the Nodegrid Platform, visit the <u>Knowledge</u> <u>Base</u>.

## Tunnel sub-tab

The main table displays available tunnels.

### **Tunnel Main Table**

Column name	Description
Name	Tunnel name.
Authentication Method	Method of authentication.
Left ID	Tunnel left ID.
Right ID	Tunnel right ID.
IKE Profile	Profile information.
Status	Current tunnel status.

Tunnels can be managed with these actions:

Add

Delete

Start Tunnel

Stop Tunnel

### WebUI Procedure

Add a new tunnel

- 1. Go to Network :: IPsec :: Tunnel.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Enter configuration details.

# ))(t zpe

Access Tracking Syste		Managed Devices	Cluster S	ecurity Auditing	네오 Dashboard						
Settings Connections	Switch	Static Routes H	osts SNMP	DHCP Server	SSL VPN	IPsec	Wireless Modem	Bluetooth	Flow Exporter	802.1x	
Tunnel IKE Profile Glo	bal										
Network :: IPsec :: Tunnel											
Save Cancel											
Name:						Auth	nentication Method:	Pre-Shared Key			
Initiate Tunnel:	Start				٢			Secret:			۲
incade runnet.								RSA Key			
IKE Profile:	nodegrid				$\Diamond$						
Local						Remote					
Left ID							Right ID:				
Leit ID							Kight ID.				
Left Address	%defaultroute				0		Right Address:				
Left Source IP Address											
						Rig	ht Source IP Address:				
Left Subnet							Right Subnet:				

### 4. Click Save.

# **IKE Profile sub-tab**

IKE Profiles activities are: Add, Delete, or Edit.

		ر System	Network		s Cluster								
Settings	Connectio	ins	Switch	Static Routes	Hosts	SNMP	DHCP Server	SSL VPN	IPsec	Wireless Modem	Bluetooth	Flow Exporter	802.1x
unnel	IKE Profile	Global											
etwork :: I	IPsec :: IKE Profile												
Add D	elete												
Pro	ofile Name			IKE	Version			Mode			Authentication	n Protocol	
Cisc	:o_ASA			IKEV	2			Not Applicable			ESP		
Palo	Alto			IKEv:	1			Main			ESP		
nod	legrid			IKEV	2			Not Applicable			ESP		

### WebUI Procedure

To add a new profile:

- 1. Go to Network :: IPsec :: IKE Profile.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Enter configuration details.



Save Cancel Profile Name: IKE Version:	IKb2	Ø			
Phase 1		Phase 2			
Encryption:	3DES	۵	uthentication Protocol:	ESP	٢
Authentication:	MD5	٢	Encryption		
Diffie-Hellman Group:	Group 2	3DES AES AES192 AES256		Add ►	
Lifetime (sec):	3600	AES-CTR AES-CTR19 AES-CTR25 AES-GCM	2 5	Remove	
		54A1 54A26 54A384 34A384 805 805 805	Authentication	Add ►	
			PFS Group:	None	0
			Lifetime (sec):	28800	

4. In Advanced Settings menu, modify details as needed.

	h.

### 5. Click Save.

### WebUI Procedure

To edit a profile:

- 1. Go to Network :: IPsec :: IKE Profile.
- 2. Locate and click on the **Profile Name**.
- 3. Modify configuration details, as needed.
- 4. Click Save.

# **Global sub-tab**

### WebUI Procedure

On this page, edit the options:

1. Go to Network :: IPsec :: Global.

L Access	🖗 Tracking	<b>رک</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	s Cluster	Security	Auditing	<u>ାଏ</u> Dashboard	
Settings	Connecti	ons	Switch	Static Routes	Hosts	SNMP DH	ICP Server	SSL VPN	IPs
Tunnel	IKE Profile	Global							
Network ::	IPsec :: Global								
Save									
	le Virtual Tunnel In	torfoco							

- 2. Select/unselect Enable Virtual Tunnel Interface checkbox.
- 3. Select/unselect Enable Logging checkbox.
- 4. Click Save.

# **Flow Exporter tab**

Netflow streaming telemetry data is supported for all network interfaces including the switch interface.

L Access	X Tracking	<b>System</b>	Network	Managed Devic		luster	) Security	Auditing	네요 Dashboard			
Setting	s Connect	ions Sta	tic Routes	Hosts	SNMP	DHC	P Server	SSL VPN	IPsec	Bluetooth	Flow Exporter	
Network	c :: Flow Exporter											
Add	Delete Edit	Enable Disable										
	Name	Status	с	Collector			Sampling	Rate		Interfaces		Aggregation Fields
	Flow2	Error	1	92.168.56.2:2055			1/12			eth0,eth1		dst_host,dst_port,proto,src_host,src_mac,src_mask,src_port,tos
	Flow3	Disabled	1	92.168.56.3:2055			1/1			eth0		dst_host,dst_port,proto,src_host,src_port,tos
	MyFlow	Running	1	27.0.0.1:2055			1/1			eth0		dst_host,dst_port,proto,src_host,src_port,tos

### Flow Exporter Main Table

Column names	Description
Name	Name of the flow.
Status	Status of the flow (Running, Disabled, Error).
Collector	IP address and port.
Sampling rate	Sampling ratio.
Interfaces	Interfaces used.
Aggregation Fields	Aggregation fields that have been added.

### Version 5.0



# Add a new flow export:

)(î nodegrid*											📥 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 🕶	
	Network		Cluster									
ettings Connections Sta	ntic Routes	Hosts SNM	P DH	CP Server	SSL VPN	IPsec	Bluetooth	Flow Exporter				
etwork :: Flow Exporter :: New												
Save Cancel												
Settings								Interfaces				
Name:	My Flow 1							Interfaces eth1	~	eth0		~
Enabled									Add ►			
Collector Address:	192.168.56.2								<pre>v</pre>			
Collector Port:	2055											
Protocol:	IPFIX						~	Aggregation Fields				
Active Timeout (s):	60							Aggregation				
Inactive Timeout (s):	15							Ethernet CoS, 802.1P Ethernet Ethertype Source MAC address	Add ►	Source IPv4/IPv6 addres Destination IPv4/IPv6 ad IP protocol		
Sampling Rate (1 out of N):	1							Destination MAC address Ethernet VLAN, 802.1Q Source network mask Destination network mask	< Remove	IP ToS Source TCP/UDP port Destination TCP/UDP po	rt	
								Source IPv4/IPv6 prefix	~			V

The following fields are needed:

Name

**Collector Address** 

Collector Port

Protocol

Active Timeout (seconds)

Inactive Timeout (seconds)

Sampling Rate (1 out of N)

Interfaces

Aggregation Fields

# QoS tab

Under the QoS tab, you are able to configure rules directly from the web interface. Three configuration levels are available: Interface, Classes, Rules.

## Interfaces sub-tab

The Interface tab allows you to Add, Edit, Delete, and Enable/Disable QoS on each available interface. The main table displays information regarding the Name, Status, Direction, and Classes for each interface.

NOTE: Status can be Disabled, Running, or Error



	Tracking Syst		Managed Devices	Cluster Security	Auditing	ي Dashboard			
Settings	Connections	Static Routes	Hosts SNMP	DHCP Server	SSL VPN	IPsec	Bluetooth	Flow Exporter	QoS
Interfaces	Classes R	ules							
Network :: Qo	S :: Interfaces								C Reload
Add Edi	it Enable Disable	Delete		Direction			Classes		^
	e	Status		Direction			classes		
eth0		Running		bidirectional			1		

### Add a new Interface

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Click Add.
- 2. Enter the details:

Interface

**QoS Direction** 

Assignment

Bandwidth

3. Click Save.

# Classes sub-tab

Classed management includes: Add, Edit, Delete, and Enable/Disable QoS classes. The main table displays information regarding Name, Enabled (yes/no), Priority, Input Reserved, Input Max, Output Reserved, and Output Max.

etwork :: QoS :: Classes Rules			ns Sta									
etwork :: QoS :: Classes 27 Re	terfaces	Classes	Rules									
	twork :: QoS	:: Classes										C Rel
Add Edit Enable Disable Delete	Add Edit	Enable Di	sable Delete									
Add Edit Enable Disable Delete	Add Edit	Enable	sable Delete									
Add Edit Enable Disable Delete	_				Input Res	served	Input Ma	x	Output Reser	ved	Output Max	
	_				Input Res	served	Input Ma	x	Output Reser	ved	Output Max	
Add       Edit       Disable       Declet         Name       Enabled       Priority       Input Reserved       Input Max       Output Reserved       Output Max         SSH       yes       0       50%       50%       50%	🗆 Name	Enal		Priority	Input Res	served		x	Output Reser	ved		
Name         Enabled         Priority         Input Reserved         Input Max         Output Reserved         Output Max	Name SSH	Enal		Priority 0		served	50%	x	Output Reser	ved		

## Add a new Class

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Click Add.
- 2. Enter the details:



Name

Priority

Assignment

Input Reserved and Max Bandwidth

### **Output Reserved and Max Bandwidth**

3. Click Save.

**NOTE**: The "Input" and "Output" sections only apply to interfaces with that corresponding direction. For example, if a class has "Input" and "Output" limits but is assigned to an interface with "output", only "Output" limits apply.

## Rules sub-tab

Customer QoS rules are managed with these actions: Add, Edit, Enable/Disable, and Delete. The main table contains information on existing rules.

nterfaces	Classes	Rules						
letwork <mark>:: Q</mark> oS	:: Rules							C Reload
Add Edit	Enable	Disable De	elete					
Add Edit		Disable De	elete		Enabled			1
		Disable De	lete		Enabled			
□ Name		Disable De	elete					

## Add a Rule

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Click Add.
- 2. Enter the details:

### Protocol

**NOTE**: Options for "Protocol" include the majority of protocol types. Entry can be by protocol number or lower-case protocol keyword. Multiple protocols can be input using comma-separated entries. Official source is at <u>Internet Assigned Numbers Authority</u>.

### Source and Destination IP

**Source and Destination Port** 

### **Source and Destination MAC**

### **Custom Parameters**

### Assignment

3. Click Save.

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.

j)([ zpe

**NOTE**: All parameters in a rule will be applied as an "AND" operation.

For all fields that support multiple values, enter comma separated values. Numeric fields support ranges, separated with a dash (i.e., 22-100).

# **Managed Devices Section**

In this section, users can configure, create, and delete target devices. The Nodegrid Platform supports target devices connected through a serial, USB, or network connection.

# **General Information**

# **Supported Protocols**

The following protocols are currently supported for network-based devices:

- Telnet
- SSH
- HTTP/S
- IPMI variations
- SNMP

The user has multiple options to manage target devices (enable, create, add). These can be done manually or automatically discover.

When a managed device is added in the System, one license is pulled from the License Pool. Each unit is shipped with enough perpetual licenses for all physical ports. Additional licenses can be added to a unit to manage additional devices.

If licenses expire or are deleted from the system, status of any devices that exceed the total licenses is changed to "Unlicensed". The System maintains information on unlicensed devices but are now shown on the Access page. Only licensed devices are listed and available for access and management. On the Managed Devices page, upper right, total licenses, total in-use, and total available is shown. See "Licenses" for more details.

# **Device Types**

These managed device types are supported:

• Console connections utilizing RS232 protocol.

Nodegrid Console Servers

- Nodegrid Net Services Routers
- Service Processor Devices using:

IPMI 1.5





- IPMI 2.0
- HP iLO
- Oracle/SUN iLOM
- IBM IMM
- Dell DRAC
- Dell iDRAC
- Console Server connections utilizing SSH protocol
- Console Server connections utilizing
  - Vertiv ACS Classic family
  - Vertiv ACS6000 family
  - Lantronix Console Server family
  - Opengear Console Server family
  - Digi Console Server family
  - Nodegrid Console Server family
- KVM (Keyboard, Video, Mouse) Switches utilizing
  - Vertiv DSR family
  - Vertiv MPU family
  - Atem Enterprise KVM family
  - Raritan KVM family
  - ZPE Systems KVM module
- Rack PDUs from
  - APC
  - CPI
  - Cyberpower
  - Baytech
  - Eaton
  - Enconnex
  - Vertiv (PM3000 and MPH2)
  - Raritan
  - Ritttal
  - Servertech



- Cisco UCS
- Netapp
- Infrabox
- Virtual Machine sessions from

VMware

KVM

Sensors

ZPE Systems Temperature and Humidity Sensor

• EdgeCore Access Points

# **Devices tab**

# **Configure Serial Connections**

The Nodegrid Platform supports RS-232 Serial connections with the available Serial and USB interfaces. Ports are automatically detected and shown in the Devices menu. To provide access to the target device, each port needs to be enabled and configured.

Before configuring the Nodegrid port, check the device manufacturer's console port settings. Most devices use default port settings: 9600,8,N,1

The Nodegrid Console Server S Series supports advanced auto-detection. This simplifies configuration with automatic detection of the cable pinout (Legacy and Cisco) and connection speed.

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the port or select the port and click Edit.

Multiple ports can be selected.

								vei
))(် nodegri	d®				a	å admin⊜lknbsr01.zpesystems.local →	3 Help	🗢 Logout
	O 🕂	Managed Devices Cluster	Security Audit		lications			
Devices Views	Types Auto Discove	ry Preferences						
Access Management	Logging Custom Fie	elds Commands						C Reload
Managed Devices :: Devices :: tt	y32 :: Access							C Reload
Save Return								
Name:	ttyS2			Address Location:				
Local Serial Port:	ttyS2			Coordinates (Lat,Lon):				
Туре:	local_serial			WEB URL:				
				Launch URL via HTML5				
Baud Rate:	9600		\$	Icon	Select Icon			
Parity:	None		\$	Mode:	Disabled		\$	
Flow Control:	None		\$					
Data Bits:	8		\$					
Stop Bits:	1		÷					
RS-232 signal for device state detection:	DCD		\$					
Enable device state detection	on based in data flow							
Enable Hostname Detection								
Enable Hostname Detection	1							
Multisession								
Read-Write Multisession								

3. Enter values for:

j)(t zpe

Baud Rate (set to speed matching target device settings, or to Auto)

Parity (None (default), Odd, Even)

Flow Control (None (default), Software, Hardware)

Data Bits (5,6,7,8 (default))

Stop Bits (1)

RS-232 signal for device state detection (DCD (default), None, CTS)

**Mode** (Enabled, On-Demand, Disabled)

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings" for more details.

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices
- 2. Use the edit command with the port name to change the port configuration. Multiple ports can be defined.
- 3. Use the show command to display current values.
- 4. Use the set command for:

# ))(t zpe

baud\_rate (set to the correct speed matching target device settings or to Auto)

parity (None (default), Odd, or Even)

flow\_control (None (default), Software, Hardware)

data\_bits (5, 6, 7, 8 (default))

stop\_bits (1)

rs-232\_signal\_for\_device\_state\_detection (DCD (default), None, CTS)

mode (Enabled, On-Demand, Disabled)

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings" for more details.

5. Use the commit command to change the settings.

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# edit ttyS2
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# show
name: ttyS2
type: local serial
address location =
coordinates =
web url =
launch_url_via_html5 = yes
baud_rate = 9600
parity = None
flow_control = None
data_bits = 8
stop_bits = 1
rs-232 signal for device state detection = DCD
enable_device_state_detection_based_in_data_flow = no
enable_hostname_detection = no
multisession = yes
read-write_multisession = no
icon = terminal.png
mode = disabled
skip_authentication_to_access_device = no
escape_sequence = ^Ec
power_control_key = ^0
show_text_information = yes
enable ip alias = no
enable_second_ip_alias = no
allow_SSH_protocol = yes
SSH_port =
allow_telnet_protocol = yes
telnet_port = 7002
```



```
allow_binary_socket = no
data_logging = no
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set mode=enabled baud_rate=Auto
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

# **Service Processor Devices**

The Nodegrid Platform supports multiple IPMI-based Service Processors (IPMI 1.5, IMPI 2.0, Hewlett Packard ILO's, Oracle/SUN iLOM's, IBM IMM's, Dell DRAC and iDRAC).

To manage these devices, Nodegrid requires a valid network connection to the target device. This can be without dedicated network interface on Nodegrid, or through an existing network connection.

These features are available:

- Serial Over LAN (SOL)
- Web Interface
- KVM sessions
- Virtual Media
- Data Logging
- Event Logging
- Power Control (through Rack PDU)

Some features might not be available, depending on the Service Processor capabilities.

For console access via SOL, on the server make sure to enable BIOS console redirect and OS console redirect (typically for Linux OS).

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices,
- 2. Click Add.

# ))(t zpe

))( nodegr	id®							٩	🛓 admin@łknbsr01.zpesystems.locał 🕶	🕑 Help	🔿 Logout
Access Tracking	ی System Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	네의 Dashboard		ications			
Devices Views		iscovery Preferer	1005								
Access Management Managed Devices :: Devices ::	00 0	om Fields Comma	nds								C Reload
Save Return						Address Loca	tion:	Limerick, Ireland		Ø	
Туре	ipmi_2.0				\$	Coordinates (Lat,L	Lon):	52.661252,-8.6301239			
IP Address:	192.168.10.10				A	WEB	URL:	http://%IP			
						🗹 Launch URL via HTMI	L5				
Username:	admin						lcon	Select Icon			
Credential	O Set Now					м	lode:	Enabled		+	
	Password				٩	Expira	ation	O Never			
	Confirm Password				P			O Date			
	Ask During Login										

- 3. Enter the Name (of the server).
- 4. In the Type drop-down, select type (ipmi1.5, ipmi2.0, ilo, ilom, imm, drac, idrac6, intel\_bmc)
- 5. Enter **IP Address** (make sure it is reachable by the Nodegrid Platform).
- 6. Enter Username.
- 7. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select Ask During Login checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

8. Click Save.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices.
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

name

type (ipmi1.5, ipmi2.0, ilo, ilom, imm, drac, idrac6)

ip\_address

username and password (of service processer) or set credential ask\_during\_login

4. Save the changes with commit.



*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings" for more details.

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=IPMI
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=ipmi_2.0
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.10.11
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

### Mount Remote Shares for Virtual Media

Nodegrid supports remote shares (NFS or Windows shares) to contain files shared with Service Processor systems. Before the files can be shared out through the Virtual Media function, the remote share must be mounted to the Nodegrid device.

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Connect to the Nodegrid shell as the root user.
- 2. Go to /var/firefox/datastore/
- 3. Create a folder.
- 4. Use the mount command to mount the remote share to the folder.

To permanently get the share mounted, the mount command can be added to the /etc/fstab file.

Example: NFS mount to folder VirtualMedia

```
mount -t nfs 192.168.1.1.:/NFS/NG /var/firefox/datastore/VirtualMedia
```

# **Device Management with SSH**

Management of target devices through SSH is supporte:

These features are available:

- Console Session
- Data Logging
- Custom Commands
- Web Sessions
- Power Control through Rack PDU

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices,
- 2. Click Add.

Ĵ(î r	nodegri	d°					٩		≜ admin@łknbsr01.zpesystems.local →	🕑 Help	🗢 Logout
Access		System Network	Managed I			iting Dashboard	Applications				
Devices	Views	200 C		Preferences							
Access Managed F	Management	Logging Cust Device_Console_SSH :: A		Commands							C Reload
	Return										C Reload
	Name:	Device_Console_SSH				Address Loc	ation: 4675	Fremont Blvd, Fremor	nt, CA 94538, USA	$\oslash$	
	Туре:	device_console			÷	Coordinates (Lat	Lon): 37.54	18582,-121.9750624			
	IP Address:	192.168.10.252				WEE	URL: https	//%IP			
	Port:					Z Launch URL via HTM	IL5				
	Username:	root					Icon Select	icon 🛕			
	Credential	Set Now					Mode: Enabl	ed		\$	
		Password				Expi	ation 🕓 Nev				
		Confirm Password					O Date				
		Ask During Login									

- 3. Enter Name (of the server).
- 4. In the Type drop-down, select type (device\_console).
- 5. Enter IP Address (make sure it is reachable by the Nodegrid Platform).
- 6. Enter **Username**
- 7. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select Ask During Login checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

8. Click Save.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings

name

name alias

type (device\_console)

[ zpe

### ip\_address

username and password (of the device) or set credential ask\_during\_login

4. Save the changes with commit

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings"

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Device_Console_SSH
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name_alias=aliasname
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=device_console
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.10.252
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

# **Third-Party Console Servers**

Multiple third party Console Servers from different vendors are supported (including consoles from Avocent and Servertech). These can be added to allow connected targets to be directly connected to a Nodegrid device.

This is a two-step process, First, the third-party unit is added to the Nodegrid Platform. Then all enabled ports are added to the Nodegrid Platform.

These features are available:

- Console Session
- Data Logging
- Custom Commands
- Web Sessions
- Power Control through Rack PDU

### Step 1 – Add Third-Party Console Servers

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices,
- 2. Click Add.



))(î n	odeg	rid®					۹		👗 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 👻	🕑 Help	එ Logout
Access	<b>A</b> Tracking	ی System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	ात्री Dashboard			
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Disc	overy Preferen	ces						
Managed De	evices :: Device	s									C Reload
Save	ancel										
	Name:	Console_Server			±	Addre	ess Location:			Ø	)
	Type:	console_server_	acs6000		\$	Coordinat	es (Lat,Lon):				
	IP Address:	192.168.2.151					WEB URL:	http://%IP			
	Port:					Launch	1 URL via HTML	5			
	Username:	admin					lcon	Select Icon	]		
	Credential	<ul> <li>Set Now</li> </ul>					Mode:	Enabled		:	•
		Password			٩		Expiration	<ul> <li>Never</li> </ul>			
		Confirm			۹			🔿 Date			
		Password			12			Days			
		Ask During Log	in				End Point	<ul> <li>Appliance</li> </ul>			
🗌 Enable	e device state de	tection based on ne	etwork traffic (i	cmp)				O Serial Port			
								KVM Port			

- 3. Enter **Name** (of the console server).
- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select type (console\_server\_nodegrid, console\_server\_acs, console\_server\_acs6000, console\_server\_lantronix, console\_server\_opengear, console\_server\_digicp, console\_server\_raritan, console\_server\_perle)
- 5. Enter IP Address (make sure the IP address is reachable by the Nodegrid Platform).
- 6. Enter **Username**
- 7. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select **Ask During Login** checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

- 8. For End Point, select Appliance radio button.
- 9. Click Save.

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices.
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

name

type (console\_server\_acs, console\_server\_acs6000, console\_server\_lantronix, console\_server\_opengear, console\_server\_digicp, console\_server\_raritan, console\_server\_perle)

ip\_address



username and password (of the device) or set credential ask\_during\_login

endpoint (appliance)

4. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Console_Server
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=console_server_acs6000
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.2.151
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set end_point = appliance
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

## Step 2 – Add Third Party Console Server Ports

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click Add.

)ှိုင် node	grid®				Q A admin@nodegrid.localdomain - 🛛 ł					O Logout
Access Tracking	ر System	Network Mai	naged Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	<u>ଲାହ</u> Dashboard			
Devices Views	Types	Auto Discovery	Preference	es						
Managed Devices :: Dev	ices									C Reload
Save Cancel	Console_Server	Port 5		<u>à</u>	Addr	ess Location:			0	
Туре	console_server_	acs6000		\$	Coordina	tes (Lat,Lon):				
IP Address:	192.168.2.151					WEB URL:	http://%IP			
Port:					🗹 Launc	h URL via HTML	.5			
Username:	admin					lcon	Select Icon			
	aunin									)
Credential	<ul> <li>Set Now</li> </ul>					Mode:	Enabled		\$	
	Password			٩		Expiration	<ul> <li>Never</li> </ul>			
	Confirm						O Date			
	Password	•••••		٩			O Days			
	O Ask During Log	in				End Point	Appliance			
<ul> <li>Enable device state</li> </ul>	detection based on ne	twork traffic (icmp)					<ul> <li>Serial Port</li> <li>Port Number:</li> </ul>	5		
🗌 Enable Hostname 🛙	etection									
							KVM Port			
Multisession										

- 3. Enter the Name (of the console server port).
- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select type (console\_server\_nodegrid, console\_server\_acs, console\_server\_acs6000, console\_server\_lantronix, console\_server\_opengear, console\_server\_digicp, console\_server\_raritan, console\_server\_perle)
- 5. Enter IP Address (make sure it is reachable by the Nodegrid Platform).
- 6. Enter **Username**
- 7. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select Ask During Login checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

- 8. For End Point, select Serial Port radio button.
- 9. Enter **Port Number**.
- 10. Click Save.

**NOTE**: Ports can be automatically detected and added. See "Auto-Discovery" for more details.

### **CLI Procedure**

1. Go to /settings/devices.

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



- 2. Use the add command to create a new device.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

#### name

type (console\_server\_acs, console\_server\_acs6000, console\_server\_lantronix, console\_server\_opengear, console\_server\_digicp, console\_server\_raritan, console\_server\_perle)

ip\_address

username and password (of the device) or set credential ask\_during\_login

endpoint (serial\_port)

port\_number (port number)

4. Save the changes with commit

NOTE: Ports can be automatically detected and added. See "Auto-Discovery" for details.

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Console_Server_Port_5
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=console_server_acs6000
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.2.151
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set end_point = serial_port
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set port_number = 5
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

## **KVM Switches**

Multiple third party KVM switches are supported (including those from Avocent and Raritan). When added, the switches act as if directly connected.

This is a two-step process, First, the third-party KVM switch is added to the Nodegrid Platform. Then all enabled ports are added.

These features are available:

- KVM Session
- Web Sessions
- Power Control through Rack PDU



### Step 1 – Add KVM Switches

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices,
- 2. Click Add.

ŋ)(î n	nodeg	<b>rid</b> °					۹		å admin@nodegrid.localdomain →	Help	<b>ሮ</b> Logout
Access	<b>X</b> Tracking	ر System I	Network Ma	naged Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	ায়াই Dashboard			
Devices	Views	Турез	Auto Discovery	Preferenc	es						
Managed D	evices :: Device	25									C Reload
Save	ancel										
	Name:	KVM_Switch			±.	Address	Location:			Ø	)
	Type:	kvm_aten			\$	Coordinates	(Lat,Lon):				
	IP Address:	192.168.2.23					WEB URL:	http://%IP			
						🗹 Launch U	IRL via HTML	5			
	Username:	admin					lcon	Select Icon			
	Credential	• Set Now					Mode:	Enabled			÷
		Password			٩		Expiration	<ul> <li>Never</li> </ul>			
					-			O Date			
		Confirm Password			٩			O Days			
		Ask During Logir	n				End Point	• Appliance			
Enable	e device state de	etection based on net	work traffic (icmp)					O Serial Port			
								KVM Port			

- 3. Enter the **Name** (of the KVM switch).
- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select type (kvm\_dsr, kvm\_mpu, kvm\_aten, kvm\_raritan)
- 5. Enter **IP Address** (make sure it is reachable by the Nodegrid Platform).
- 6. Enter Username
- 7. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select **Ask During Login** checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

- 8. For End Point, select Appliance radio button.
- 9. Click Save.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

#### **CLI Procedure**

1. Go to /settings/devices

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



- 2. Use the add command to create a new device
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

### name

type (kvm\_dsr, kvm\_mpu, kvm\_aten, kvm\_raritan)

ip\_address

username and password (of the device) or set credential ask\_during\_login

endpoint (appliance)

4. Save the changes with commit

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=KVM_Switch
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=kvm_aten
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.2.151
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set end_point = appliance
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now\
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

### Step 2 – Add KVM Switch Ports

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices,
- 2. Click Add.

າງ(໌ເ n	odeg	<b>rid</b> ®				۹ 📕			👗 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 👻	🕑 Help	<b>ሮ</b> Logout
L Access	<b>X</b> Tracking	ر System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	Contraction Security	Auditing	ାଣାଡ୍ର Dashboard			
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Disco	overy Preferen	ces						
Managed De	evices :: Device	25									C Reload
Save	ancel										
	Name:	KVM Switch			à	Addre	ess Location:			Q	)
	Type:	kvm_aten			\$	Coordinat	tes (Lat,Lon):				
	IP Address:	192.168.2.23					WEB URL:	http://%IP			
						🗹 Launch	h URL via HTML	5			
	Username:	admin					lcon	Select Icon	0		
	Credential	O Set Now					Mode:	Enabled			¢
		Ask During Lo	ogin				Expiration	<ul> <li>Never</li> </ul>			
🗌 Enable	e device state de	etection based on	network traffic (ic	:mp)				O Date			
🗹 Multise	ession							🔿 Days			
Se matus							End Point	<ul> <li>Appliance</li> </ul>			
🗌 Read-V	Vrite Multisessi	on						Serial Port			
								KVM Port			

- 3. Enter the Name (of the KVM switch port).
- 4. In the Type drop-down, select type (kvm\_dsr, kvm\_mpu, kvm\_aten, kvm\_raritan)
- 5. Enter **IP Address** (make sure it is reachable by the Nodegrid Platform).
- 6. Enter Username
- 7. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select Ask During Login checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

- 8. For End Point, select KVM Port radio button.
- 9. Enter Port Number.
- 10. Click Save.

NOTE: Ports can be automatically detected and added see "Auto-Discovery" for details.

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices.
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

name



type (kvm\_dsr, kvm\_mpu, kvm\_aten, kvm\_raritan)

ip\_address

username and password (of the device) or set credential ask\_during\_login

endpoint (kvm\_port)

port\_number (port number)

4. Save the changes with commit

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

NOTE: Ports can be automatically detected and added. See "Auto Discovery" for details.

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Console_Server_Port_5
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=kvm_aten
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.2.151
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set end_point = kvm_port
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set port_number = 1
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

# Rack PDUs

Multiple third-party Rack PDUs from different vendors are supported. (including products from APC, Avocent, Baytech, CPI, Cyberpower, Eaton, Enconnex, Geist, Liebert, Raritan, Rittal, and Servertech). When these devices are added to the Nodegrid Platform, users can connect to the Rack PDU and control the power outlets (only if supported by the Rack PDU). Outlets can be associated to specific target devices, allowing direct control of specific power outlets for this target device.

These features are available:

- Console Sessions
- Data Logging
- Custom Commands
- Web Sessions
- Power Control of outlets



The Power Control feature needs to be supported by the Rack PDU. Check the Rack PDU manual to determine if this feature is available on a specific model.

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices,
- 2. Click Add.

ો્રે(t́ no	deg	rid <sup>®</sup>				٩			≗ admin@nodegrid.localdomain →	@ Help	O Logout
C Access Tr	8 acking	ر System	Network	C Managed Devices	Cluster		iting	<u>ා</u> ම Dashboard			
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Discov	ery Preferen	ces						
Managed Device	es :: Device	es									C Reload
Save	3										
	Name:	Rack PDU			<u>الله</u>	Address Loca	tion:			(	0
	Type:	pdu_servertech			\$	Coordinates (Lat,	Lon):				
IP /	Address:	192.168.2.39				WEB	URL:	http://%IP			
						🛛 Launch URL via	a HTML5				
Use	ername:	admin					Icon	Select Icon	]		
Cri	edential	<ul> <li>Set Now</li> </ul>				м	ode:	Enabled			+
		Password			۹	Expira		Never			
		Confirm Password			۹			) Date ) Days			
		O Ask During Log	ţin								

- 3. Enter the **Name** (of the Rack PDU).
- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select type (pdu\_apc, pdu\_baytech,pdu\_eaton, pdu\_mph2, pdu\_pm3000, pdu\_cpi,pdu\_raritan, pdu\_geist, pdu\_servertech, pdu\_enconnex, pdu\_cyberpower,pdu\_rittal)
- 5. Enter **IP Address** (make sure it is reachable by the Nodegrid Platform).
- 6. Enter Username
- 7. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select **Ask During Login** checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

8. Click Save.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

**NOTE**: By default, Nodegrid communicates with the Rack PDU with SSH/telnet. The reaction time is typically very slow. If possible, use SNMP to communicate with the Rack PDU.

WebUI – Change Communication to SNMP



- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Locate and click the Name of the newly added Rack PDU
- 3. On the Commands tab, Command column, click Outlets.

Access       Yiews       Types       Auto Discovery       Preferences         Access       Management       Logging       Custor Fields       Outlets	
Access Management Logging Custom Fields Commands Outlets	
Managed Devices :: Devices :: Rack_PDU :: Commands	<b>2</b> R
Return Add Delete	
Command Command Status Protocol Protocol Status	
Console Enabled SSH Enabled	
Data Logging Disabled None Not Applicable	
Outlet Enabled SSH Enabled	
Web Enabled HTTP/S Enabled	

4. On the new page, change Protocol to SNMP.

Click Save.

ŋ(t n	nodeg	rid®					۹		📥 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 👻	🕑 Help	ტსი
Access	& Tracking	ر <b>ت</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	्रि Security	Auditing	ারাই Dashboard			
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Disco	overy Preference	tes						
Access	Management	Logging	Custom	Fields Comman	ds Out	lets					
Managed D	evices :: Devices	:: Rack_PDU :: (	Commands								🕫 Relo
Save	leturn										
	Command:	Outlet									
🕑 Enabl	ed										
	Protocol:	SNMP				÷					
The cor	mmand will only b	e available if the	protocol it uses i	s enabled under manager	nent.						

### 5. On the **Management** tab:

In the *SNMP* menu, update values to match the settings on the Rack PDU (see manufacturer's manual).

Click Save.

**NOTE**: Use SNMP settings to provide read and write access. Read-Only credentials can not control power outlets.

Ŋ(t r	nodegi	rid				۹			📥 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 🔫	🕑 Help	Ċ Logout
Access	<b>A</b> Tracking		letwork Ma	anaged Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	네일 Dashboard			
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Discovery	Preferenc	es						
Access	Management		Custom Field	ds Command	ls Outlet	s					
Managed D	evices :: Devices	:: Rack_PDU :: Man	lagement								🗢 Reload
Save	leturn										
Device	2					🗹 Disco	ver Outlets				
					-	Inter	val [minutes]:	60			
	Name:	Rack_PDU			±.						
						Script	s				
Protoc	col										•
SSH	I/Telnet					Run o	n Session Start:				¢
	Credential	💿 Use Same as Ac	cess			Run o	n Session Stop:				¢
		O Use Specific				Ru	n on Device UP:				¢
SNN	ИP					Run o	n Device Down:				¢
	SNMP Version	O Version 1									
		• Version 2									
		Community:	private								
		O Version 3									
		0									

6. The Rack PDU Outlets are automatically discovered (may need a few minutes, depending on the Rack PDU).

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices.
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings

### name

type (pdu\_apc, pdu\_baytech, pdu\_eaton, pdu\_mph2, pdu\_pm3000, pdu\_cpi, pdu\_raritan, pdu\_geist, pdu\_servertech, pdu\_enconnex, pdu\_cyberpower, pdu\_rittal)

ip\_address

username and password (of the device) or set credential ask\_during\_login

endpoint should be defined as appliance

4. Save the changes with commit

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

# ))( zpe

**NOTE**: By default, Nodegrid communicates with the Rack PDU with SSH/telnet. The reaction time is typically very slow. If possible, use SNMP to communicate with the Rack PDU.

### CLI – Change Communication to SNMP

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<device name>/commands/outlet.
- 2. Change the protocol to SNMP.
- 3. Go to /settings/devices/<device name>/management.
- 4. Enable SNMP and select the desired SNMP version and details.
- 5. Save the changes with commit.

**NOTE**: Use SNMP settings to provide read and write access. Read-Only credentials can not control power outlets.

6. The Rack PDU Outlets are automatically discovered (may need a few minutes, depending on the Rack PDU).

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Rack_PDU
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=pdu_servertech
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip address=192.168.2.39
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices/Rack PDU/commands/outlet
[admin@nodegrid outlet]# set protocol=snmp
[admin@nodegrid outlet]# cd /settings/devices/Rack_PDU/management/
[admin@nodegrid management]# set snmp=yes
[+admin@nodegrid management]# snmp version = v2
[+admin@nodegrid management]# snmp_commmunity = private
[+admin@nodegrid management]# commit
```

# Cisco UCS

Management of Cisco UCS is supported through Console Ports, as well as management interfaces.

These features are available:

- Console Session
- Data Logging

# ))(t zpe

- Event Logging
- Power Control through Cisco UCS appliance
- Web Session
- Custom Commands

### Add Cisco UCS

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices,
- 2. Click Add.

ງ)ີ(ໂ n	odegri	d					٩		🛦 admin@lknbsr01.zpesystems.local +	🛛 Help	😃 Logout
CCC Access		System Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	Security Audi						
Devices	Views		scovery Prefere	ices							
Access	Management	00 0	om Fields Comma	nds							
Managed De	evices :: Devices :: C	Cisco-UCS :: Access									C Reload
Save	sturn										
	Name:	Cisco-UCS				Address Location	:			$\oslash$	
	Type:	cimc_ucs				Coordinates (Lat,Lon)					
	.,,	_									
	IP Address:	192.168.10.152				WEB URL	http://%IP				
	Chassis ID:	1				Launch URL via HTML5					
	Blade ID:	1									
	Username:	admin				Icon	Select Icon	de-de- lisce			
	Credential	<ul> <li>Set Now</li> </ul>				Mode	Enabled			ŧ	
		Password	•••••		(	Expiration	<ul> <li>Never</li> </ul>				

- 3. Enter the Name (of the Cisco UCS Blade).
- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select type (cimc\_ucs).
- 5. Enter **IP Address** (make sure it is reachable by the Nodegrid Platform).
- 6. Enter Chassis ID.
- 7. Enter Blade ID.
- 8. Enter Username
- 9. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select Ask During Login checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

10. Click Save.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

**CLI Procedure** 

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.

# ))(t zpe

- 1. Go to /settings/devices.
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

name (of the blade)

type (cimc\_ucs)

ip\_address

chassis\_id

blade\_id

username and password (of the device) or set credential ask\_during\_login

4. Save the changes with commit.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Cisco-UCS
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=cimc_ucs
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.10.151
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set chassis_id=1 blade_id=1s
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

# Netapp

Netapp appliances are supported through their management interfaces.

These features are available:

- Console Session
- Data Logging
- Event Logging
- Power Control through Netapp appliance
- Web Session

# ))( zpe

- Custom Commands
- Power Control through Rack PDU

### Add Netapp

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices,
- 2. Click Add.

)्रि nodegri	d®		۹	🛔 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 🗸	Help	O Logou				
	System Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	<u>ଥା</u> ମ୍ମ Dashboard				
Devices Views	Types Auto D	iscovery Preferer	ices							
Managed Devices :: Devices										C Reload
Save Cancel										
									0	
Name:	Netapp				A	Address Location:			Ø	
Туре:	netapp				\$	Coordinates (Lat,Lon):				
IP Address:	192.168.2.223					WEB URL:	http://%IP			
						Launch URL via HTML5				
Username:	admin					Icon	Select Icon			
Credential	Set Now					Mode:	Enabled		\$	
	Password				٩	Expiration	O Never			
	Confirm Password				۹		O Date			
							O Days			
	Ask During Login									
L										

- 3. Enter the Name.
- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select type (netapp).
- 5. Enter **IP Address** (make sure it is reachable by the Nodegrid Platform).
- 6. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select Ask During Login checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

7. Click Save.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device/
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

name



type (netapp)

ip\_address

username and password (of the device) or set credential ask\_during\_login

4. Save the changes with commit

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Netapp
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=netapp
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.10.250
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

## Infrabox

Smart Access Control is supported for Rack's solution appliances (Infrabox) from InfraSolution. Communication requires SNMP to be configured.

These features are available:

- Door Control
- Web Session
- Power Control through Rack PDU

### **Add Infrabox**

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices,
- 2. Click Add.

)(t r	iodegri	d°		٩	🛔 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 🗸	🛛 Help	🗢 Logout				
L. Access		System Network	Managed Devices	🗱 Cluster	Security	Auditing	<u>ଜାହ</u> ି Dashboard				
Devices	Views	and the second	Discovery Prefere	nces							
Access	Management	00 0	tom Fields Commi	ands							<b>a</b> 241-44
Managed D	evices :: Devices :: I	ntrabox :: Access									C Reload
Save	etum Name:	Infrabox				ă.	Address Location:			Ø	
	Туре:	infrabox				\$	Coordinates (Lat,Lon):				
	IP Address:	192.168.10.12				۵	WEB URL:	http://%IP			
							Launch URL via HTML5				
	Username:					1	Icon	Select Icon			
	Credential	O Set Now					Mode:	Enabled		\$	
		O Ask During Login					Expiration	O Never			
C Enable	e device state detecti	on based on network traff	ic (icmp)					ODate			

- 3. Enter Name.
- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select type (infrabox).
- 5. Enter **IP Address** (make sure it is reachable by the Nodegrid Platform).
- 6. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select **Ask During Login** checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

7. Click Save.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

8. On the Management tab

Update the SNMP values to match the appliance settings.

Click Save.



ງ)ີ(ໂ n	odegric	* t						۹	📥 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 👻	မြ Help ပြံ Log
Access		Stem Network	Hanaged Devices	Cluster	) Security	Auditing	୍ମାଣ୍ଡ Dashboard			
Devices		Types Auto Dis		000510						
Access	Management	00 0	m Fields Comma	inds						
Managed De	evices :: Devices :: Inf	rabox :: Management								C Relo
Save	eturn									
Device						:	Scripts			
	Name:	Infrabox					Run on Session Start:			\$
							Run on Session Stop:			\$
Protoc	ol						Run on Device UP:			\$
SNM SNM	IP						Run on Device Down:			\$
	SNMP Version	O Version 1								
		O Version 2								
		Community:	public							
		O Version 3								

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices.
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

name

type (infrabox)

ip\_address

username and password (of the device) or set credential ask\_during\_login

4. Save the changes with commit

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

- 5. Go to /settings/devices/<Device>/management/
- 6. Use the set command to define SNMP values:

#### snmp\_version

#### snmp\_community

7. Save the changes with commit.

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Infrabox
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=infrabox
```

```
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.10.250
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
[admin@nodegrid outlet]# cd /settings/devices/Infrabox/management/
[admin@nodegrid management]# set snmp=yes
[+admin@nodegrid management]# snmp_version=v2
[+admin@nodegrid management]# snmp_commmunity=private
[+admin@nodegrid management]# commit
```

# **Virtual Machines**

j)(t zpe

Management of VMware virtual machines are supported, including KVM Virtual Machines.

These features are available:

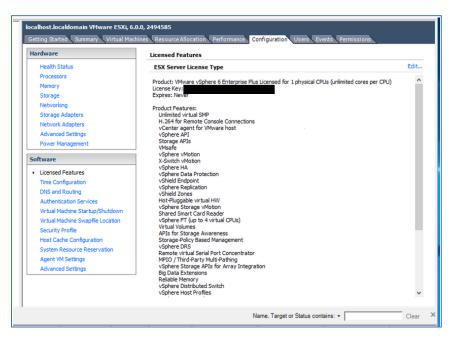
- MKS Sessions (for VMware machines only)
- Virtual Serial console session (for VMware machines only)
- Console session (for KVM machines only)
- Power Control through the hypervisor
- Web Session to the device

Direct connections to ESX or VSphere servers are supported. When a direct connection is made, the ESX server has to support the feature: "vCenter agent for VMware Host". This is enabled through an ESX server license.

To check if the ESX server supports this feature, login to the ESX host and go to the *License Feature* section. Host supported licenses and features are listed.







**NOTE**: To utilize the vSPC option with VMware virtual machines, the port must be configured on the Virtual Machine. See "Configuring Virtual Serial Port (vSPC)".

# **Configure Auto Discovery of VMware Virtual Machine**

# Step 1 – Add VMware Virtual Machine

## Step 1 – WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Auto Discovery :: VM Managers.
- 2. Click Add.

))(î nodegr	id <sup>*</sup>						۹	🛓 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 🗸	@ Help	O Logout
Access Tracking	ر System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	네일 Dashboard			
Devices Views	Types	Auto Discov								
Network Scan VM Mar		Discovery Rules	Hostname Dete	ction	Discovery Logs	Discover Nov	w			
Managed Devices :: Auto Disc	overy :: 192.	168.2.217 :: VM Ma	nagers							C Reload
VM Server: Username:	Vcenter				Ē					
Password					٢					
Confirm Password					٩					
Virtualization Type:	VMware				\$					
HTML console port [http, https]:	7331,7343									

3. In VM Server, enter vCenter/ESXi IP or FQDN.

# ))(t zpe

- 4. Enter Username.
- 5. Enter *Password* and Confirm Password.
- 6. (if needed) Enter HTML console port.
- 7. Click Save.

# Step 2 – install VMRC

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Auto Discovery :: VM Managers.
- 2. Click Install VMRC.

This sets up graphical device connections and console access to virtual machines.

<u>))(</u> n	odeg	rid®			۹		•	admin@GateSR.localdomain 🛩	Help	එ Logout
	A Tracking	ی System	Network	Contractor Managed Devices	Cluster	ि Security	Auditing	্বাঞ্ছ Dashboard		
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Disc	overy Preferen	ces					
Network Sca	an VM M	lanagers	Discovery Rule	s Hostname Dete	ction Di	scovery Logs	Discover No	w		
Managed De	evices :: Auto D	iscovery :: VM	Managers							C Reload
Add	elete Install VI	MRC								
VM S	Server	Virtualizat	ion Type	Discover Virt	ual Machines		Discovery	Polling Interval [minutes]		

# Step 3 – Add VMware virtual machine

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click Add.

Ŋ(t r	nodegri	d®								a <b>199</b>	å admin⊜lknbsr01.zpesystems.local →	🕑 Help
	<b>R</b> Tracking	ر System	Network	Managed		Cluster	E Security	Auditing	ଲାହି Dashboard			
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Diso	overy	Preference	s						
Access	Management	Logging	; Custom	n Fields	Command	s						
Managed D	evices :: Devices :: •	virtual_mach	ine :: Access									
Save	Return											
	Name:	virtual	machine						Address Location:			$\oslash$
	Туре:	virtual_o	console_vmware					\$	Coordinates (Lat,Lon):			
	IP Address:	192.168	.10.50						WEB URL:	http://96IP		
									🕑 Launch URL via HTML5			
🗌 Enabl	le device state detect	ion based on r	network traffic (ie	cmp)					lcon	Select Icon vm		
	VM Manager:	192.168.	10.11					\$	Mode:	Enabled		\$
🕑 Multis	session								Expiration	O Never		
										O Date		

3. Enter Name (of the Virtual Machine).

This must match the Hypervisor Name.

- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select type (virtual\_console\_vmware).
- 5. (optional) Enter IP Address.
- 6. In VM Manager drop-down, select the correct hypervisor.
- 7. Click Save.

## CLI Procedure – define VM Manager

- 1. Go to /settings/auto\_discovery/vm\_managers/
- 2. Use the add command to create a VM Manager.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

vm\_server (vCenter/ESXi IP or FQDN)

```
username and password (of the device) or set credential ask_during_login
```

Adjust the html\_console\_port (if needed)

4. Save the changes with commit.

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/auto_discovery/vm_managers/
[admin@nodegrid vm_managers]# add
[admin@nodegrid {vm_managers}]# set vm_server=vCenter
[admin@nodegrid {vm_managers}]# set username=admin
[admin@nodegrid {vm_managers}]# set password=password
[admin@nodegrid {vm_managers}]# commit
```



## CLI Procedure – add VMware Virtual Machine

- 1. Go to /settings/devices
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

name

type (virtual\_console\_vmware)

(optional) ip\_address

vm\_manager (existing VM Manager)

4. Save the changes with commit

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Virtual_Machine
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=virtual_console_vmware
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.2.151
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set vm_manager=192.168.10.11
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

# **Add KVM Virtual Machine**

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click Add.

))( nodegri	d*		م 🗖	🛓 admin@lknbsr01.zpesystems.local +	• Help	O Logout
	vstem Network Managed Devices Cluster Security A	uditing Dashboard				
Devices Views	Types Auto Discovery Preferences					
Managed Devices :: Devices						C Reload
Save						
Name:	virtual_machine_kvm	Address Location:			Ø	
Туре:	virtual_console_kvm	Coordinates (Lat,Lon):				
IP Address:	192.168.10.11	WEB URL:	http://%iP			
Port:		🗹 Launch URL via HTML5				
Username:	root	Icon	Select Icon KA			
Credential	Set Now	Mode:	Enabled		\$	
	Password	Expiration				
	Confirm Password		Date			

3. Enter Name.

Must match the hypervisor name.

- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select type (virtual\_console\_kvm).
- 5. Enter IP Address.
- 6. Enter **Username**.
- 7. Enter Password and Confirm Password.
- 8. Click Save.

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

name (must match the machine's hypervisor name)

type (virtual\_console\_kvm)

ip\_address

username (for KVM hypervisor)

password (for KVM hypervisor)

4. Save the changes with commit.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices

Version 5.0

[admin@nodegrid devices]# add [admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=virtual\_machine\_kvm [admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=virtual\_console\_vmware [admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip\_address=192.168.10.11 [admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=root [admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set password=password [admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit

# **Device Management**

cess	8 Tracking	ැ <b>O</b> System	Network	Hanaged Devices	Cluster	1 Security	Auditing	Dashboard	
evices	Views	Types	Auto Disco	overy Preferent	xes				
cess	Management			Fields Comman	ds				
naged D	evices :: Devices	:: perle :: Mana	gement						
Save R	eturn								
Monito	oring								Device
Non	linal								Name: perie
									Discovery
									(and the set of the se
									Ø Discover Ports
									Interval (minutes): 60
									Discovered Name: O Inherit from Appliance
									Uscovered Name: Use Pattern
									2 Purge Disabled End Point Ports
									Action: Olisable Ports
									Remove Ports

On the **Management** tab, the following settings are available:

- Monitoring menu (enable/disable Nominal monitoring)
- Device menu (Name of the device)
- Discovery menu

Discovery Ports (enable/disable)

Interval (minutes)

Discovered Name (options to Inherit from Appliance or Use Pattern)

Purge Disabled End Point Ports (options are Disable Ports or Remove Ports)

# Authenticate with SSH Keys

For added security, devices can be configured to authenticate via SSH keys. When enabled, The SSH is connected with key pairs (user does not require password).

NOTE: Not all devices support this feature

# **Enable SSK Key Authentication**

## WebUI Procedure

1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices :: <nameofdevice> :: Access.



- 2. Select Allow Pre-shared SSH Key checkbox.
- 3. Click Save.

The SSH Keys button will now appear next to the Save and Return buttons.

# Generate a new SSH Key

#### WebUI Procedure

1. Click SSH Keys.

ា្ញំ( nodegr	id <sup>®</sup>							۹		🛔 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 🕶	<b>⊘</b> Help	¢۱
	System Netwo			Cluster		Auditing	교말 Dashboard					
Devices Views	Types Au	to Discovery	Preference	s								
Access Management		Custom Fields	Commands									
Managed Devices :: Devices :	test :: Access											C Re
Save Return SSH Keys												
Name:	test					Ad	dress Location:				Ø	)
Type:	device_console				~	Coordi	nates (Lat,Lon):					
IP Address:	192.168.0.110						WEB URL:	http://%6IP				
Port:	22					Launch	URL via HTML5					
							Method:	Internal Browser				
								O Browser Extension Fo	orwarder			
Username:	marcelo						Icon:	Select Icon				
Credential:	Set Now						Mode:	Enabled			~	]
	Password:				۲		Expiration:	Never				
								O Date				
	Confirm Password:	•••••			۲			○ Days				
	O Ask During Login											
Allow Pre-shared SSH Key	(											
Enable device state detec	tion based on network t	raffic (icmp)										
Enable Hostname Detecti	on											

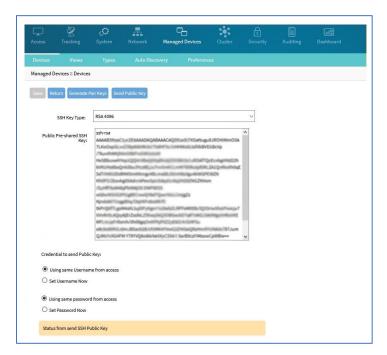
- 2. On SSH Key Type drop-down, select type.
- 3. Click Generate Pair Keys.

**NOTE**: The same username and password as the current account can be used. Alternatively, these can be set now (at the bottom of the page).

4. Click **Send Public Key**. This sends the key to the device.

**NOTE**: Not all devices support the Send Public Key feature. If not, manually copy the Public key to the device.





**NOTE**: On a connection to a Managed Device with Pre-shared SSH Key enabled, username is still required. If the device fails to authenticate, at the prompt, enter the password.

# **Auto-Discovery**

The System automatically discovers and adds network devices, enabled ports on console servers, KVM switches, and VMware (Virtual Serial Ports and Virtual Machines).

Clones of existing devices can be created. Make sure the source device is correctly configured. After the clone is created, use this verification process:

- 1. Access the clone to verify username, password and IP address is correct.
- 2. Audit the log files to verify data logging and event logging settings are correct.
- 3. Simulate events and check if any notification is created
- 4. Verify events are detected on the data and event logs
- 5. Verify that the device is in the correct authorization group with proper access rights.

# **Auto Discovery General Process**

1. Create a template device.

This device is a clone that includes all the settings, except connection details to the discovered devices. It is recommended the clone be configured with all settings as on end devices.

**NOTE**: For each target device type, a template device must be created.

- 2. For network devices, create a Network Scan.
- 3. For virtual machines, create a Virtual Manager.
- 4. For all devices, create a Discovery Rule



This links the template device with discovery rules. These rules determine action taken on every discovered device.

5. Start the discovery process.

This process automatically starts when a device is added to the Nodegrid Platform. The process can be manually started at any point from the WebUI (*Managed Devices :: Auto Discovery :: Discover Now*) or CLI (/settings/auto\_discovery/discover\_now/).

jįli noc	legrid							۹.	🛦 admin@nodegrid.localdomain +	€ Help	() Logo
🖵 🤤		Network	Po Managed Devices	Cluster			[all] Dashboard				
	Aexis Typ										
letwork Scan Janaged Devices	VM Managers : Auto Discovery ::	Discovery Rules		ction D	biscovery Logs	Discover No	1				Ø Relo
Discover Now											
Name							Туре				
Console_Se							Console Server Ports				

# Auto Discovery of Console Server and KVM Switch Ports

The Console Server appliance and KVM Switches can be discovered using the Network Devices process. Use the Auto Discovery process to automatically add and configure managed devices for third-party console server ports and KVM switch ports. See "Auto Discover of Network Devices".

# **Create a Template Device**

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click Add.

(î nodegri	id										🛦 sdmin@nodegrid.localdomain +	@ Help	OLogout
C Rest Tracking	ر <b>O</b> System		ped Devices		Auditing	Dashboard							
vices Views	Types	Auto Discovery	Preference										
aped Devices :: Devices ::	Loggi Console S	ng Custom Fields erver_Ports_Template :: Ad	Command	5									C Reloa
ave Return	Name:	Console_Server_Ports_Ter	nolate					Address Location:				Ø	
												0	
	Type:	console_server_acs6000					٠	Coordinates (Lat,Lon):					
IP	Address:	127.0.0.1					-	WEB URL:	http://%iP				
	Port:							Launch URL via HTML5					
Us	semame:	admin						loon	Select Icon				
Cr	redential	Set Now						Mode:	Disabled			٠	
		Password					P	Expiration	Never				
		Confirm Password					9		O Date				
									Days				
		Ask During Login						End Point	Appliance     Serial Port				
Enable device state detect	tion based o	n network traffic (icmp)							Port Number:	1			
									. Ort manifold.	1.61			

3. Enter a **Name** (of the template).



- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select a type (console\_server\_acs, console\_server\_acs6000, console\_server\_lantronix, console\_server\_opengear, console\_server\_digicp, console\_server\_raritan, console\_server\_perle)
- 5. For **IP Address**, enter **127.0.0.1**
- 6. Select Ask During Login checkbox.
- 7. For End Point menu, select Serial Port or KVM Port radio button. Enter Port Number.
- 8. On Mode drop-down, select Disabled (ensures the device is not displayed on the Access page).
- 9. Click Save.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings

name

type (console\_server\_acs, console\_server\_acs6000, console\_server\_lantronix, console\_server\_opengear, console\_server\_digicp, console\_server\_raritan, console\_server\_perle)

ip\_address as 127.0.0.1 Set credential to Ask During Login endpoint (serial\_port or kvm\_port) port\_number (port number) Set mode to disabled

4. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Console_Server_Port_Template
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=console_server_acs6000
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.2.151
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set end_point=serial_port
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set port_number=1
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set mode=disabled
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

# Create a Discovery Rule



- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Auto Discovery :: Discovery Rules
- 2. Click Add.

(t nodegrid	Q a administrationali • • • •	р
ccess Tracking System	Network Managed Devices Cluster Security Auditing Dashboard	
evices Views Types etwork Scan VM Managers	Auto Discovery Parlemences Discovery Rules Hostname Detection Discovery Logs Discover Now	
-		Ø R
Save Cancel		
Rule Name:	Console, Server, Ports	
Status:	Enabled 0	
Discovery Method	© DHCP	
	With Serial	
	With Manager     Konsole Server Parts	
	e conserverens Pertis: 1-4	
	Lookup Pittern: List of individual ports separated by commas and/or port range separated by dash (e.g. 1,3,5,10-28).	
	KM Parts     Network Stan	
Host or VM identifier:		
Lookup Pattern: any substring of hosts	name or virtual machine name from discovered device.	
Action:	Cone (Mode Enabled)	
Clone from:	Console_Server_Ports_Template 4	

- 3. Enter **Rule Name** (of Discovery Rule).
- 4. On **Status** drop-down, select an item (Enabled, Disabled)
- 5. In Discovery Method menu, select Console Server Ports or KVM Ports radio button.
- 6. For **Port List**, enter a list of ports to be scanned (i.e., 1,3,5,10-20).
- 7. For Host or VM Identifier, enter a parameter to apply as an additional filter.

If a value is provided, part of the port name must match the value.

- On Action drop-down, select an action item to be performed when a new device is discovered (Clone (Mode:Enabled), Clone (Mode:On-Demand), Clone (Mode:Discovered), Discard Discovered Devices)
- 9. In the **Clone from** drop-down, select the template device (created earlier).
- 10. Click Save.
- 11. Create a Console Server or KVM Switch appliance (See "Add Console Servers".).

After the appliance is created, the Nodegrid Platform automatically starts discovering attached devices (based on the created Discovery Rules).

This process takes several minutes.



າງໂ໌ no	deg	rid									A admin@nodegrid.locak	Somain - 🛛 Help	O Logout
		ی. System	Network					Deshboard					
and the second sec	Tree	Node	Мар	Image									
Access :: Table												<b>₽</b> Pin	it C Reload
Search:											Connected	In-Use Disconnecte	d 📗 Unknow
v 🇌 node	legrid 🖸	orecite trifo											
Name					Action	ns Nam	ie		Action	is Name			Actions
Console	e_Server				Console		Console_Server_	Port1	Conside	Console_Server_Port2			Console Web

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/auto\_discovery/discovery\_rules/
- 2. Use the add command to create a Discovery Rule.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

rule\_name (for the Discovery Rule)

status for the rule (enabled, disabled)

method set to console\_server\_ports or kvm\_ports

port\_list (list of ports which should be scanned – i.e., 1,3,5,10-20)

host\_identifier parameter (apply as a filter)

(If a value is provided, part of the port name must match the value)

- 4. For action (enter action taken when a new device is discovered) (clone\_mode\_enabled, clone\_mode\_on-demand, clone\_mode\_discovered, discard\_device)
- 5. clone\_from (template device created earlier)
- 6. Save the changes with commit.

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/auto_discovery/discovery_rules/
[admin@nodegrid discovery_rules]# add
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set rule_name=Console_Server_Ports
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set status=enabled
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set method=console_server_ports
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set port_list=1-48
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set action=clone_mode_enabled
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set
clone_from=Console_Server_Ports_Template
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# commit
```

7. Create a Console Server or KVM Switch appliance See "Add Console Servers".

After the appliance was created, the Nodegrid Platform automatically starts discovery of attached devices based on the created Discovery Rules.

This process takes several minutes.

# Auto Discovery of Network Devices

Network appliances can be automatically discovered and added to the Nodegrid Platform. This includes appliances which support Telnet, SSH, ICMP, Console Servers, KVM Switches or IMPI protocols plus others.

Appliances can be discovered through various methods, in combination or singly:

- Similar Devices (select one of the devices from the drop-down menu),
- Port Scan and enter a list of ports in the Port List field,
- Ping
- DHCP (via MAC Address)

Setup is a three-step process:

- 1. Create a Template Device
- 2. Create a Network Scan
- 3. Create a Discovery Rule.

# **Create a Template Device**

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click Add.

Ĵ(î n	odeg	rid®								📥 admin@lknbsr01.zpesystems.local 🗸	🕑 Help	🗢 Logout
	8 Tracking	<b>CO</b> System	Network I	C	Cluster	Security	Auditing	) Dashboard	Applications			
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Discove	ry Preference	is -							
Access	Management		Custom Fie	elds Command	s							
Managed De	evices :: Devices	:: Network_Temp	olate :: Access									C Reload
Save Re	Name: Type: IP Address: Port:	Network_Tem device_consol				•	Address Locat Coordinates (Lat, L WEB I Zaunch URL via H	on):	://%IP		0	
	Username: Credential	Set Now					Mi	ide: Disal			•	]
		Ask During Letter	ogin				Expira	tion O Net				

- 3. Enter Name (of the template).
- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select a type (device\_console, ilo, imm, drac, idrac6, ipmi1.5, impi2.0, ilom, cimc\_ucs, netapp, infrabox, pdu).



- 5. For IP Address, enter 127.0.0.1
- 6. Enter Username
- 7. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select Ask During Login checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

- 8. On Mode drop-down, select Disabled (ensures the device is not displayed on the Access page).
- 9. Click Save.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

name

type (device\_console, ilo, imm, drac, idrac6, ipmi1.5, impi2.0, ilom, cimc\_ucs, netapp, infrabox, pdu\*)

ip\_address as 127.0.0.1

username and password (of the device) or set credential ask\_during\_login

set mode to disabled

4. Save the changes with commit

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Network_Template
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=device_console
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=127.0.0.1
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set mode=disabled
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```



# **Create a Network Scan**

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Auto Discovery :: Network\_Scan
- 2. Click Add.

)(t nodegr	id®						۹		📤 admin@iknbsr01.zpesystems.local 🕶	🛛 Help	🕲 Logout
Access Tracking	ی System	Network	Hanaged Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	네일 Dashboard	Applications			
Devices Views	Types	Auto Disco	1. State 1.								
Network Scan VM Mar Managed Devices :: Auto Disc		Discovery Rules		ection (	iscovery Logs	Discover N	w				C Reload
Save Cancel											
Scan ID:	SSH_Cons	ole									
IP Range Start:											
ir Range Start:	192.168.10	.1									
IP Range End:	192.168.10	.254									
Enable Scanning											
Similar Devices											
Port Scan											
Port List:	22										
List of individual ports sep-	arated by com	mas and/or port ra	ange separated by dash (	e.g. 1,3,5,10-20							
Ping											
Scan Interval (in minutes):	100										
					© 2013-2018	ZPE Systems <sup>*</sup> , Inc.					

- 3. Enter Name (of Scan ID)
- 4. Enter IP Range Start (to be scanned).
- 5. Enter IP Range End (to be scanned).
- For scan methods, select checkbox and define one or more of the three scan methods: Similar Devices (select an existing template used to identify devices)
   Port Scan (define a list of ports which should be reachable on the device)
   Ping (no further settings required)
- 7. Select Enable Scanning checkbox
- 8. In Scan interval (in minutes), enter a value.
- 9. Click Save.
- CLI Procedure
- 1. Go to /settings/auto\_discovery/network\_scan/
- 2. Use the add command to create a Network Scan
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

# ))(t zpe

scan\_id (name for the Network Scan)

ip\_range\_start and ip\_range\_end (define a network range to be scanned)

Set enable\_scanning to yes to enable the scan

4. Define one or more of the three scan methods:

similar\_devices (set device to match one of the existing devices or templates

port\_scan (set to yes)

set port\_list (to a list of ports reachable on the device)

ping (no further settings are required)

- 5. Set scan\_interval (when to scan, in minutes)
- 6. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/auto_discovery/network_scan/
[admin@nodegrid network_scan]# add
[+admin@nodegrid {network_scan}]# set scan_id=SSH_Console
[+admin@nodegrid {network_scan}]# set ip_range_start=192.168.10.1
[+admin@nodegrid {network_scan}]# set ip_range_end=192.168.10.254
[+admin@nodegrid {network_scan}]# set enable_scanning=yes
[+admin@nodegrid {network_scan}]# set similar_devices=yes
[+admin@nodegrid {network_scan}]# set device= network_template
[+admin@nodegrid {network_scan}]# set port_scan=yes
[+admin@nodegrid {network_scan}]# set port_list=22
[+admin@nodegrid {network_scan}]# set ping=no
[+admin@nodegrid {network_scan}]# set scan_interval=100
[+admin@nodegrid {network_scan}]# commit
```

# **Create a Discovery Rule**

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Auto Discovery :: Discovery Rules
- 2. Click Add.

#### Version 5.0



))(် nodegr	ʻid "						۹		📥 admin@lknbsr01.zpesystems.local 👻	Help	O Logout
Access Tracking	System Net	work	Managed Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	네일 Dashboard	Applications			
Devices Views		luto Discove	ry Preferen	ices							
Network Scan VM Ma	-	ery Rules	Hostname Dete	ection I	Discovery Logs	Discover N	ow				
Managed Devices :: Auto Dis	covery :: Network_So	an :: Discove	ry Rules								C Reload
Save											
Rule Name:	Network_Scan										
Status:	Enabled				¢						
Discovery Method	O DHCP										
	○ VM Serial										
	O VM Manager										
	O Console Server Po	orts									
	KVM Ports										
	<ul> <li>Network Scan</li> </ul>										
	Scan ID:	SSH_Cons	ole		\$						
Host or VM Identifier:											
Lookup Pattern: any subst	tring of hostname or vi	rtual machine	name from discovere	od device.							
Action:	Clone (Mode: Enabl	ed)			¢						
Clone from:	Network_Template				¢						

- 3. Enter Name (of the Discovery Rule)
- 4. On **Status** drop-down, select (Enabled, Disabled)
- 5. On **Discovery Method** menu, select **Network Scan** checkbox.
- 6. On **Scan ID** drop-down, select (the created Network Scan ID).
- 7. In **Host or VM Identifier** menu, enter parameter to further filter (if provided, part of port name must match value).
- On Action drop-down, select action to be performed when a new device is discovered (Clone (Mode:Enabled), Clone (Mode:On-Demand), Clone (Mode:Discovered), Discard Discovered Devices)
- 9. In the Clone from drop-down, select the template device created earlier
- 10. Click Save.

The Nodegrid Platform automatically starts discovering devices, based on the created Discovery Rules.

This process will take a few minutes to complete.

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/auto\_discovery/discovery\_rules/
- 2. Use the add command to create a Discovery Rule.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

rule\_name for the Discovery Rule

status for the discovered rule (enabled, disabled)



method set to network\_scan

scan\_id select a Network Scan ID created earlier

host\_identifier parameter to further filer, if provided - part of the port name must match the value)

- 4. For action, select what should be done on a new device discovery (clone\_mode\_enabled, clone\_mode\_on-demand, clone\_mode\_discovered, discard\_device)
- 5. clone\_from set to the template device created earlier
- 6. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/auto_discovery/discovery_rules/
[admin@nodegrid discovery_rules]# add
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set rule_name=Network_Scan
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set status=enabled
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set method=network_scan
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set scan_id=SSH_Console
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set action=clone_mode_enabled
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set clone_from=Network_Template
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# commit
```

The Nodegrid Platform automatically starts discovering devices, based on the created Discovery Rules.

This process takes a few minutes to complete.

# Auto Discovery of Virtual Machines

Virtual Machines which are managed by VMware vCenter or run on ESXi can be discovered and managed directly on Nodegrid. The process will regularly scan vCenter or the ESXi host and detect newly added Virtual Machines. The virtual machines can be added as type virtual\_console\_vmware or virtual\_serial\_port. (See "Configuring Virtual Serial Port (vSPC) on VM Servers".)

NOTE: The free version of ESXi is not supported.

# **Create a Template Device**

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices
- 2. Click Add button.
- 3. Enter Name (of the template).
- 4. In the **Type** drop-down, select a type (virtual\_console\_vmware).
- 5. For **IP Address**, enter 127.0.0.1
- 6. Enter Username
- 7. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select **Ask During Login** checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



- 8. Select **Mode Disabled** checkbox (ensures device is not displayed on Access page).
- 9. Click Save.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

ງ)ີ( nodegri	d°						۹	🛓 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 👻	🛛 Help	🕈 Logout
Access Tracking	System Network	Managed Devices	۲. Cluster	f Security	Auditin	ଲାଙ୍କି g Dashboard				
Devices Views	Types Auto Dis	covery Preferen	ces							
Access Management		m Fields Comman	ıds							
Managed Devices :: Devices :: \	'itual_Machine_Template	:: Access								C Reload
Save										
Name:	Vitual_Machine_Templa	ite				Address Location:			Ø	
Type:	virtual_console_vmware	2			\$	Coordinates (Lat,Lon):				
MKS command requires VMv	vare VMRC package installed	. Contact support@zpesyst	ems.com for det	ails.		WEB URL:	http://96IP			
IP Address:	127.0.0.1					Launch URL via HTML5				
Enable device state detecti	on based on network traffic	(icmp)				lcon	Select Icon			
VM Manager:					¢	Mode:	Disabled		\$	
Multisession						Expiration	Never			
Read-Write Multisession							<ul> <li>Date</li> <li>Days</li> </ul>			
Enable Send Break										

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

name

type (virtual\_console\_vmware)

ip\_address as 127.0.0.1

set mode to disabled

4. Save the changes with commit

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Virtual_Machine_Template
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=virtual_console_vmware
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=192.168.2.151
```

```
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set mode=disabled
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

# Create a Discovery Rule

# WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Auto Discovery :: Discovery Rules
- 2. Click Add.

ၨ)(î nodegri	d°					٩	🛔 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 🔫	🕑 Help	🕲 Logout
	iystem Network	Managed Devices	Cluster Security	Auditing I	ାର୍ଥ Dashboard				
Devices Views	Types Auto D	iscovery Prefere	ices						
Network Scan VM Manag		les Hostname Det	ection Discovery Logs	Discover Now					
Managed Devices :: Auto Discov	very :: Discovery Rules								C Reload
Save Cancel									
Rule Name:	Virtual Machines								
Status:	Enabled			\$					
	O DHCP								
Discovery Method	VM Serial								
	WM Manager								
	Datacenter:								
	Cluster:								
	Lookup Pattern: any su	ibstring of datacenter and/c	r cluster from discovered device						
	Console Server Ports								
	KVM Ports								
	Network Scan								
Host or VM Identifier:									
Lookup Pattern: any substrin	g of hostname or virtual m	achine name from discover	ed device.						
Action:	Clone (Mode: Enabled)			\$					
Clone from:	Vitual_Machine_Templ	ate		\$					
				© 2013-2018 ZPE Syste	me <sup>®</sup> lac				*
				© 2013-2016 2PE Syste	1110 y 11164				- T

- 3. Enter Rule Name (of Discovery Rule).
- 4. On Status drop-down, select an item (Enabled, Disabled)
- 5. In Discovery Method menu, select VM Manager.
- 6. (optional) Use the fields **Datacenter** and **Cluster** to filter the scan to these specific entries.
- 7. For Host or VM Identifier, enter a parameter to apply as an additional filter.

If a value is provided, part of the port name must match the value.

- On Action drop-down, select an action item to be performed when a new device is discovered (Clone (Mode:Enabled), Clone (Mode:On-Demand), Clone (Mode:Discovered), Discard Discovered Devices)
- 9. In the Clone from drop-down, select the template device (created earlier).

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



# 10. Click Save.

# **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/auto\_discovery/discovery\_rules/
- 2. Use the add command to create a Discovery Rule
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

rule\_name for the Discovery Rule

status for the discovered rule (enabled, disabled)

method set to vm\_manager

Use datacenter and cluster to define filters based on Data Center and or Cluster

host\_identifier parameter (apply as a filter)

(If a value is provided, part of the port name must match the value.)

- 4. For action (enter action taken when a new device is discovered) (clone\_mode\_enabled, clone\_mode\_on-demand, clone\_mode\_discovered, discard\_device)
- 5. clone\_from (template device created earlier)
- 6. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/auto_discovery/discovery_rules/
[admin@nodegrid discovery_rules]# add
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set rule_name=Virtual_Machine
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set status=enabled
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set method=vm_manager
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set action=clone_mode_enabled
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set clone_from=Vitual_Machine_Template
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# commit
```

# **Define a VM Manager**

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Auto Discovery :: VM Managers
- 2. Click Add.

))( nodegr	'id "						٩	🛓 admin@nodegrid.localdomain 👻	🕜 Help	🗢 Logout
Access Tracking	ر System	Network N	Aanaged Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	<u>제일</u> Dashboard			
Devices Views	Types	Auto Discover								
	nagers	Discovery Rules	Hostname Detec	tion [	Discovery Logs	Discover N	w			
Managed Devices :: Auto Dis	covery :: 192	2.168.2.217 :: VM Mana	igers							C Reload
Save Cancel VM Server:	Vcenter				Ē.					
Username:	admin									
Password					Ð					
Confirm Password					P					
Virtualization Type:	VMware				\$					
HTML console port [http, https]:	7331,734	3								

- 3. In VM Server, enter the vCenter/ESXi IP or FQDN.
- 4. Enter Username.
- 5. Enter Password.
- 6. Enter HTML console port (if needed).
- 7. Click Save.

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/auto\_discovery/vm\_managers/
- 2. Use the add command to create a VM Manager.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

vm\_server (vCenter/ESXi IP or FQDN)

Define username and password

Adjust the html\_console\_port (if needed)

4. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/auto_discovery/vm_managers/
[admin@nodegrid vm_managers]# add
[admin@nodegrid {vm_managers}]# set vm_server=vCenter
[admin@nodegrid {vm_managers}]# set username=admin
[admin@nodegrid {vm_managers}]# set password=password
[admin@nodegrid {vm_managers}]# commit
```

5. The Nodegrid Platform connects to the vCenter or ESXi system.

This can take several minutes).



# **Enable Discover Virtual Machines**

#### WebUI Procedure

1. Click on the newly created and connected VM Manager.

iscovery Scope Opti			
atacenter List	Cluster List	Add	Remove
emo-DC:			_

- 2. Select Discover Virtual Machines checkbox.
- 3. In **Discovery Polling Interval (minutes)**, enter a value.
- 4. Click Save.

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Log into the newly created VM Manager
- 2. Enable Discover Virtual Machines option.
- 3. Define the Data Center and Discovery Polling Interval.
- 4. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid 192.168.2.217]# set html_console_port=7331,7343
[admin@nodegrid 192.168.2.217]# set discover_virtual_machines=yes
[admin@nodegrid 192.168.2.217]# set interval_in_minutes=15
[admin@nodegrid 192.168.2.217]# set discovery_scope=Demo-DC!
[admin@nodegrid 192.168.2.217]# commit
```

# Auto Discovery of DHCP Clients

The Nodegrid Platform can be used as a DHCP Server for Clients within the management network. These devices can be automatically discovered and added to the Nodegrid platform. This feature only



supports DHCP clients that receive DHCP lease from the local Nodegrid Platform. See "DHCP Server for details.

# **Create a Template Device**

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Enter Name (of the template).
- 4. For **IP Address**, enter 127.0.0.1
- 5. In the **Type** drop-down field, select a type (device\_console, ilo, imm, drac, idrac6, ipmi1.5, impi2.0, ilom, cimc\_ucs, netapp, infrabox, pdu\*).
- 6. Enter Username.
- 7. Enter Password and Confirm Password.

Alternatively, select Ask During Login checkbox (user credentials are entered during login).

- 8. Select **Mode Disabled** checkbox (ensures device is not displayed on Access page).
- 9. Click Save.

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

ງ)ີ( nodegi	rid				۹ 🔳		着 admin@lknbsr01.zpesystems.local 🗸	မ Help O Logo
Access Tracking	System Network	Managed Devices	Cluster Securit	y Auditing	ୁଲାହି Dashboard	Applications		
Devices Views	Types Auto Disco	very Preference	s					
Access Management		Fields Command	5					
Managed Devices :: Devices	:: Network_Template :: Access							C Reloa
Save Return Name: Type:	Network_Template device_console		÷	Address Loca Coordinates (Lat,L				0
IP Address: Port:	127.0.0.1			WEB		6IP		
Username:					Icon Select Ico	on 📮		
Credential	Set Now			м	ode: Disabled	đ		\$
	Ask During Login			Expira				
					O Date			

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices
- 2. Use the add command to create a new device,



3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

name

type (device\_console, ilo, imm, drac, idrac6, ipmi1.5, impi2.0, ilom, cimc\_ucs, netapp, infrabox, pdu\*)

ip\_address as 127.0.0.1

username and password (of the device) or set credential ask\_during\_login

Set mode to disabled

4. Save the changes with commit

*Optional*: Settings which control the display and behavior of the device can be adjusted at this time. See "Device Settings".

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/devices
[admin@nodegrid devices]# add
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set name=Network_Template
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set type=device_console
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set ip_address=127.0.0.1
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=ask_during_login
or
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set credential=set_now
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set username=admin password=admin
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# set mode=disabled
[admin@nodegrid {devices}]# commit
```

# **Create a Discovery Rule**

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Auto Discovery :: Discovery Rules
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Enter Name (of the Discovery Rule)
- 4. On Status drop-down, select (Enabled, Disabled)
- 5. On **Discovery Method** menu, select **DHCP** checkbox.
- 6. (optional) To filter specific entries, enter MAC Address.
- 7. In **Host or VM Identifier** menu, enter parameter to further filter (if provided, part of port name must match value).



- On Action drop-down, select action to be performed when a new device is discovered (Clone (Mode:Enabled), Clone (Mode:On-Demand), Clone (Mode:Discovered), Discard Discovered Devices)
- 9. In the Clone from drop-down, select the template device created earlier

## 10. Click Save.

After the rule is created, the device is automatically added to the system as soon as it receives a DHCP address or renews its DHCP address lease. The default for the address lease renewal is every 10 minutes.

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/auto\_discovery/discovery\_rules/
- 2. Use the add command to create a Discovery Rule.
- 3. Use the set command to define the following settings:

rule\_name for the Discovery Rule

status for the discovered rule (enabled, disabled)

method set to dhcp

(optional) use the mac\_address field to filter to these specific entries

host\_identifier parameter can be used to further apply a filter if a value is provided then part of the port name has to match the value

action - select what should be performed when a new device is discovered (clone\_mode\_enabled, clone\_mode\_on-demand, clone\_mode\_discovered, discard\_device)

- 4. clone\_from set to the template device created earlier
- 5. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# cd /settings/auto_discovery/discovery_rules/
[admin@nodegrid discovery_rules]# add
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set rule_name=Network_Scan
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set status=enabled
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set method=dhcp
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set mac_address=00:0C:29
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set action=clone_mode_enabled
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# set clone_from=Network_Template
[admin@nodegrid {discovery_rules}]# commit
```

# **Configure Individual Device Settings**

Most devices support additional configuration options and settings. This section provides details and procedures on configuration.



# Hostname Detection

Hostname (network or serial) is automatically discovered when logged into the Nodegrid Platform, based on user access permissions. By default, Nodegrid devices include probes and matches for these device types: PDUs, NetApp, Console Servers, Device Consoles, and Service Processors.

Nodegrid sends a probe and waits for a match. If no match, a second probe is sent. This is repeated until a match occurs, then the probe process stops.

# **Configure Hostname Detection**

Hostname detection must be enabled on the target device. After hostname detection is enabled, it runs only once and then reverts to disabled.

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Locate and click on the device name. This displays the device details page.

Save			
Name:	example1		
Type:	ilo	¥	
IP Address:			
Address Location:		$\oslash$	
Coordinates (Lat,Lon):			
WEB URL:	http://%IP		
Launch URL via HTML5			
Username:			
Credential	Set Now		
	Password		
	Confirm Password		
	Ask During Login		
Enable device state detection b	ased on network traffic (icm	0)	
Enable Hostname Detection			
Multisession			
Read-Write Multisession			
Enable Send Break			

- 3. Select Enable Hostname Detection checkbox.
- 4. Click Save.



# **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Set enable\_hostname\_detection to yes
- 3. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]# set enable_hostname_detection=yes
[+admin@nodegrid /]# commit
```

# **Hostname Detection Settings**

On each target device, settings can be adjusted – WebUI (*Managed Devices :: Auto Discovery :: Hostname Detection*) or CLI (/settings/auto\_discovery/hostname\_detection).

Devices	Views	Types	Auto Discovery	Preferences			
Network Scan	VM Ma	nagers	Discovery Rules	Hostname Detection	Discovery Logs	Discover Now	
Managed Devic	es :: Auto Dis	covery :: Hos	tname Detection				C Reload
Save Cance							
	Prob	e timeout (se	5				
	Nu	umber of retrie	s: 3				
Discover	red name upd	ates device na	me				
🗌 New dise	covered devic	e receives the	name during conflict.				

Probe timeout (sec) (timeout to wait for output)

Number of retries (number of times probe is resent if no output available)

**Discovered name updates device name** checkbox (enabled by default – if disabled, no devices names are updated, even if a match was found.)

New discovered device receives the name during conflict checkbox (if enabled and multiple devices have the same name, the latest discovered device is receives the name.)

# Create a Probe or Match

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Auto Discovery :: Hostname Detection
- 2. Click Add.



Devices	Views Typ	pes Auto D	iscovery Preferences					
Network Scan	VM Managers	Discovery Ru	les Hostname Detection	Discovery Logs	Discover Now			
Managed Device	anaged Devices :: Auto Discovery :: Hostname Detection							
Save	1							
	String	Type: Match						
	s	tring: [\n\r]%H	(I L)ogin:					

- 3. For **String Type**, enter a type (Match or Probe).
- 4. In **String**, enter characters to be the Match or Probe.

**NOTE**: For Matches, RegEx expressions are allowed. Use the variable %H to indicate the location of the hostname.

5. Click Save.

```
CLI Procedure
```

- 1. Go to /settings/auto\_discovery/hostname\_detection/string\_settings
- 2. Type add
- 3. Use the set command to define string\_type (match, probe)
- 4. Use the set command to define a probe or match string
- 5. Make active
- 6. Save the changes with commit

**NOTE**: For Matches RegEx expressions are allowed. Use the variable %H to indicate the location of the hostname

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/auto_discovery/hostname_detection/string_settings
[admin@nodegrid /]# add
[admin@nodegrid /]# set string_type=match
[+admin@nodegrid /]# set match_string=[\a\r]%H{I|L)ogin:
[+admin@nodegrid /]# active
[+admin@nodegrid /]# commit
```

# Multi sessions

With multi-sessions enabled, several users can access the same device at the same time. All users see the same output. By default, the first user has read-write access, and all other users have read access. When the Read-Write Multisession option is enabled, all connected users have read-write access to the session. Because only one user at a time has write access, the system automatically switches to the first user who is entering keystrokes.

On the console session menu, all connected users can be viewed. (see "Break Signal"). This is also available for device console sessions.

#### WebUI Procedure

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Locate and click the target device name. This displays device details.

Save		
Name:	example1	
Type:	ilo	•
IP Address:		
Address Location:		Ø
Coordinates (Lat,Lon):		
WEB URL:	http://%iP	
Launch URL via HTML5		
Username:		
Credential	Set Now	
	Password	
	Confirm Password	innin .
	Ask During Login	
Enable device state detection b	ased on network traffic (icm;	D)
Enable Hostname Detection		
Multisession		
Read-Write Multisession		
Enable Send Break		

- 3. Select the **Multi-sessions** checkbox.
- 4. (optional) Select Read-Write Multi-session checkbox.
- 5. Click Save.

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Set multisession to yes
- 3. (optional) set write\_multisession to yes
- 4. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]# set multisession=yes
[+admin@nodegrid /]# set read-write_multisession=yes
[+admin@nodegrid /]# commit
```

# **Break Signal**

When this is enabled, users can send a break signal via the SSH console session. This is enabled on a per-device basis. The break sequence is configurable.

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name. This opens the details page.

Read-Write Multisession	
🕑 Enable Send Break	
Break Sequence:	~break

- 3. Select the Enable Send Break checkbox.
- 4. Change Break Sequence, as needed.
- 5. Click Save.

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Set enable\_send\_break to yes
- 3. Adjust break\_sequence, as needed
- 4. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]# set enable_send_break=yes
[+admin@nodegrid access]# set break_sequence=~break
[+admin@nodegrid access]# commit
```

# **Escape Sequences**

Escape Sequences allow users to keep the current session active, and open another session. There are two types of escape sequences: open another normal session menu or open the power menu (for direct power control of a target device). See "Power Menu Preferences".

Both escape sequences are preset with a default value. This value can be changed, if needed.



# **Escape Sequences**

Item	Default sequence	Key combination
Escape Sequence	^Ec	CTRL+SHIFT+E c
Power Control Key	^0	CTRL+SHIFT+O

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name. This opens device details.

Escape Sequence:	^Ec
Power Control Key:	^0

- 3. In Escape Sequence, enter new value.
- 4. In Power Control Key, enter new value.
- 5. Click Save.

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Adjust the escape\_sequence or power\_control\_key, as needed.
- 3. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]# set escape_sequence=^Ec
[+admin@nodegrid access]# set power_control_key=^0
[+admin@nodegrid access]# commit
```

# **Disable User Authentication**

By default, user authentication is required to access a target device. If not required, Nodegrid authentication can be disabled for specific devices.

**NOTE**: This disables any Nodegrid authentication method for this device. It is recommended to configure an appropriate authentication mechanism.

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name. This opens device details.
- 3. Select the Skip authentication to access device (NONE authentication) checkbox.



# 4. Click Save.

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Set the skip\_authentication\_to\_access\_device to yes to disable authentication
- 3. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]# set skip_authentication_to_access_device=yes
[+admin@nodegrid access]# commit
```

# SSH / Telnet Port

Administrators can define a specific SSH or telnet port for target devices. By default, each target device has a unique assigned telnet port. Port 7000 is used as a base port, plus the port number. For SSH connections, the default port is used for all connections.

SSH and Telnet ports can be adjusted, as needed.

**NOTE**: SSHv1 is deprecated. Only SSHv2 is supported.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name. This opens device details.

✓ Allow SSH protocol	
SSH Port:	
Telnet and Binary Socket require enabl	ed Telnet Service to Managed Device
Allow Telnet protocol	
Telnet Port:	7006
Allow Binary Socket	

3. Select Allow SSH protocol checkbox or Allow Telnet protocol checkbox.

NOTE: Both options are enabled by default.

4. Enter the Port Number.

#### **CLI Procedure - SSH**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Use the set command set allow\_SSH\_protocol to yes.
- 3. Use the set command to define a SSH\_port number.



4. Save the changes with commit

## **CLI Procedure - Telnet**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Use the set command set allow\_telnet\_protocol to yes
- 3. Use the set command to define a telnet\_port number
- 4. Save the changes with commit

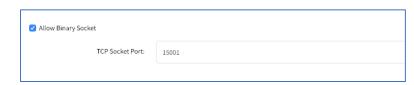
```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]# set allow_SSH_protocol=yes
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set SSH_port=17001
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set allow_telnet_protocol=yes
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set telnet_port=7001
[+admin@nodegrid access]#commit
```

# **Binary Socket**

With Binary Socket, third-party systems can directly access the device as if physically connected. Signals are transmitted directly and are not encapsulated in the telnet or SSH protocol. A specific port needs to be assigned.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name. This opens device details.
- 3. Select Allow Binary Socket checkbox.
- 4. Enter Port Number.



#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Use the set command set allow\_binary\_socket to yes
- 3. Use the set command to define a tcp\_socket\_port number
- 4. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]# set allow_binary_socket=yes
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set tcp_socket_port=15001
[+admin@nodegrid access]#commit
```





## **IP Aliases**

Console sessions can be started from the WebUI, CLI console, or a SSH/telnet client. For a SSH client, the default method to access is to pass the target device name (as a parameter).

Port Aliases allow the user to connect to a target device with IP addresses. Each IP Alias supports the definition of a telnet with binary port.

The allocation of up to two IP address alias are supported for each target device (IPv4 and IPv6 addresses).

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices:: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name. This opens device details.

IP Address:	192.168.100.25
Interface:	eth0
Allow Telnet Protocol	
TCP Socket Port:	23

- 3. Select Enable IP Alias checkbox.
- 4. Enter a valid **IP Address**.
- 5. On Interface drop-down, select from list.
- Select Allow the Telnet Protocol checkbox.
   Enter TCP Socket Port.
- (if interface supports) Select Allow Binary Socket checkbox.
   Enter Port Number.
- 8. (optional) Select Enable Second IP Alias checkbox.

Repeat above steps.

9. Click Save.

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Use the set command set enable\_ip\_alias to yes
- 3. Use the set command to define the following values:

ip\_alias - IP address

Interface (network interface to used)

ip\_alias\_telnet - enable/disable telnet

ip\_alias\_telnet\_port - Telnet port to be used

ip\_alias\_binary - If the interface should support binary socket connections

- 4. Repeat these steps for enable\_second\_ip\_alias
- 5. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]# set enable_ip_alias=yes
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set ip_alias=192.168.10.249
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set interface=eth0
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set ip_alias_telnet=yes
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set ip_alias_telnet_port=23
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set ip_alias_binary=no
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set ip_alias_binary_port=15001
[+admin@nodegrid access]#commit
```

## Location

Each Device can be associated with a location, displayed in the Map view. The location can be defined through address details or directly through Longitude and Latitude values. If provided with an address, the device requires an Internet connection to determine the longitude and latitude.

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name. This opens device details.



- 3. In **Address Location**, enter the full address. Click the **Locater** icon (to the right) to identify the latitude and longitude.
- 4. Alternatively, in **Coordinates (Lat., Lon)**, enter valid coordinates.
- 5. Click Save.

### CLI Procedure

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Use the set command to provide valid latitude and longitude coordinates
- 3. Alternatively, provide an address.
- 4. Save the changes with commit

[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device\_Console\_Serial/access/



```
[admin@nodegrid /]# set coordinates="37.5418582,-121.9750624"
[+admin@nodegrid access]# set address_location="46757 Fremont Blvd, Fremont, CA 94538,
USA"
[+admin@nodegrid access]# commit
```

**NOTE**: The CLI does not support the look-up address function.

## **Device Web URL Options**

A Web URL can be defined for each device. The URL is used for the WebUI, available for each device by default. The default URL (for all IP based sessions) is http://%IP where %IP will be replaced by the IP Address values defined for that device. By default, the URL opens inside an HTML5 frame which is forwarded to the client. This allows unsecured device web interfaces to be passed through without exposing the device to the network.

This is controlled by the setting Launch URL via HTML5.

Another option is to launch the URL via Forwarder. This reduces resource usage by redirecting to a web server. This provides the same behavior as the HTML5 frame. The device's interface can be viewed in full-screen mode rather than a windowed frame.

This is controlled by the setting: Launch URL via Forwarder.

rwarder
e plugin installed on your browser
6

NOTE: The Forwarder extension must be installed on the client's browser.

## **Install Chrome Forwarder Extension**

- 1. Open Google Chrome and go to <a href="https://chrome.google.com/webstore/detail/nodegrid-web-access-exten/cmcpkbfnablakhllgdmbhkedpoengpik">https://chrome.google.com/webstore/detail/nodegrid-web-accessexten/cmcpkbfnablakhllgdmbhkedpoengpik</a>
- 2. Click Add to Chrome.
- 3. When the extension is installed, it is ready to use.

## Launch URL in HTML5

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name.
- 3. Go to the Launch URL in HTML5 menu.



WEB URL:	http://%IP
Launch URL via HTML5	

- 4. For **WEB URL**, adjust as needed.
- 5. Select Launch URL via HTML5 checkbox.
- 6. Click Save.

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Use the set command to adjust the web\_url
- 3. Enable or disable the launch of the URL in HTM5 window by setting launch\_url\_via\_html5
- 4. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]# set web_url=https://%IP
[+admin@nodegrid access]# set launch_url_via_html5=yes
[+admin@nodegrid access]# commit
```

## Assign Icon to Device

An icon can be defined for each device. Different icons can define different device types.

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name.
- 3. Go to the *lcon* menu.



- 4. Click Select Icon and select an icon.
- 5. Click Save.

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Use the set command to adjust the icon to a valid value. Use tab-tab at this point to see a list of valid values.
- 3. Save the changes with commit



```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]# set icon=switch.png
[+admin@nodegrid access]# commit
```

## **Device Mode**

Mode defines how the device is managed by the Nodegrid Platform and how device status is confirmed. Four different modes are supported.

## Disabled

Device is disabled. No sessions can be opened to it and Nodegrid does not check if the device is reachable.

### Enabled

Device is enabled. Sessions can be started and Nodegrid actively checks if it is reachable.

## **On-Demand**

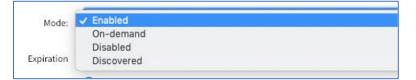
On-Demand is device enabled. A session can be started. Nodegrid does not check if a device is reachable

### Discovered

Device is disabled. No sessions can be opened. Nodegrid does not check if the device is reachable. This mode indicates the device was added to the system through a discovery process.

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name. Go to *Mode* menu.



3. On the **Mode** drop-down, select a mode.

**NOTE**: Discovered mode is a system status and can not be selected.

### 4. Click Save.

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Use the set command to adjust the mode to either:

enabled

disabled

on-demand



### 3. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]# set mode=enabled
[+admin@nodegrid access]# commit
```

## **Device Expiration**

Each device has a defined expiration date or days. Once expired, the device automatically becomes unavailable. The default value is Never. The device and data stays in the system until removed by an admin user.

### Date

The device will be available until the date specified. After that date, it will be set to Disabled mode and admin user has 10 days to take action. After 10 days, the device and its data will be removed from the system.

#### Days

This is similar to a timeout. If no update on the device's configuration after the specified days, the device and its data is removed from the System. This is independent of the use of the device.

With VM devices, both Date and Days are synced with the ESXi Servers where the VMs are constantly being added, moved, and deleted, or if the Nodegrid managed device license becomes available.

**NOTE**: This feature is only available for IP-based devices.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name. Go to the *Expiration* menu.



3. Select radio button for: **Never**, **Expiration Date** or **Expiration Days** and provide an appropriate value.

Date (format: YYYY-MM-DD)

Days (between 1 and 999999999)

4. Click Save.

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Use the set command to adjust expiration:

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.

Confidential



#### never

#### date

set expiration\_date with valid entry YYYY-MM-DD

### days

set expiration\_days with a valid number 0 and 9999999999

3. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]#set expiration=date
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set expiration_date=2020-01-01
[+admin@nodegrid access]#commit
or
[admin@nodegrid /]#set expiration=days
[+admin@nodegrid access]#set expiration_days=5
[+admin@nodegrid access]#commit
or
[admin@nodegrid /]#set expiration=never
```

## **Device State Detection**

This is a device state detection that indicates if a device is currently available.

## **Serial Devices**

By default, Nodegrid uses DCD or CTS signals for serial devices. If these signals do not exist for a specific device, the device state detection can be changed to use data flow. For data flow, the state is based on actual data transmitted by the device. To function, this must be enabled.

## **IP Devices**

For IP-based devices, the default mechanism is a monitored active SSH session. Additionally, an ICMP (ping) check can be enabled to check if active. To function, the Enable device state detection based on network traffic (icmp) must be enabled.

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name. Go to Device State Detection menu.
- 3. Select the appropriate checkbox:

For serial: select Enable device state detection based in data flow checkbox.



🔲 Enable device state detection based in data flow

For other devices: Select Enable device state detection based on network traffic (icmp) checkbox.

Enable device state detection based on network traffic (icmp)

### 4. Click Save.

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/access
- 2. Use the set command to enable the device state detection

For serial:

enable\_device\_state\_detection\_based\_in\_data\_flow

For other devices:

enable\_device\_state\_detection\_based\_on\_network\_traffic

3. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/access/
[admin@nodegrid /]#set enable_device_state_detection_based_in_data_flow=yes
```

or

```
[admin@nodegrid /]#set enable_device_state_detection_based_on_network_traffic=yes
```

[+admin@nodegrid access]#commit

## **Triggered Custom Scripts on Device Status Change**

Users can assign custom scripts to specific device status changes. This is normally used when a specific status change occurs, and a pre-defined action is needed.

**NOTE**: Custom scripts can be created by the customer or a professional services provider.

The following status changes can be used as triggers for custom scripts:

- Session Start
- Session Stop
- Device Up
- Device Down

# ))(t zpe

Copy the scripts to /etc/scripts/access folder before assignment to a device status condition. Each script must be executable with user privileges.

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name.
- 3. On the details page, go to the **Management** sub-tab.

ripts		
Run on Session Start:	provission_port.py	\$
Run on Session Stop:		\$
Run on Device UP:		\$
Run on Device Down:		\$

4. In the Scripts menu, select an available script for the appropriate device status drop-down list:

Run on Session Start drop-down

Run on Session Stop drop-down

Run on Device UP drop-down

Run on Device Down drop-down

5. Click Save.

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/management
- 2. Use the set command to assign a script to a device status

on\_session\_start

on\_session\_stop

on\_device\_up

on\_device\_down

3. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/management/
[admin@nodegrid /]#set on_session_start=sessionstart.sh
[+admin@nodegrid management]#commit
```

## **Data Logging**

NOTE: This feature is available to log all text-based sessions (serial or SSH-based).



When enabled, data logs capture all session information sent and received from a device. Session data is recorded even if no user is connected. System messages are logged when pushed to console sessions. Location of data logs (local or remote) is based on Auditing settings.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name.
- 3. Go to Logging sub-tab.
- 4. Select **Data Logging** checkbox.

Access	Management	Logging	Custom Fields	Commands				
Managed [	Devices :: Devices :: Se	erial_Console ::	Logging					
Save	Return							
	Name:	Serial_Consol	e					
🗹 Data	Logging							
🗌 Enab	Enable data logging alerts							

### 5. Click Save.

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/logging
- 2. Use the set command to change the data\_logging value to yes or no.
- 3. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/logging/
[admin@nodegrid /]#set data_logging=yes
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#commit
```

## **Event Logging**

This feature logs events for Service Processor and IPMI sessions. When enabled, the System collects Service Processor Event Log data. The type of collected data depends on the Service Process functions and configuration.

The settings control the interval of collected information (1 min to 9999 hours). Location of data logs (local or remote) is based on Auditing settings.

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name.



3. Go to **Logging** sub-tab.

Access M	anagement	Logging	Custom Fields	Commands			
Managed Devic	es :: Devices :: il	o :: Logging					C Reload
Save Return	n						
	Name:	ilo					
🗌 Data Loggi	ng				<ul> <li>Event Logging</li> </ul>		
					<ul> <li>Enable event logging alerts</li> </ul>		
					Event Log Frequecy:	1	
					Event Log Unit:	hours	•

- 4. Select Event Logging checkbox.
- 5. Adjust Event Log Frequency or Event Log Unit values, as needed
- 6. Click Save.

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Gi to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/logging
- 2. Use the set command to change the event\_logging value to yes or no.
- 3. Use the set command to adjust values, as needed

event\_log\_frequency (range 1 - 9999)

event\_log\_unit (hours or minutes)

4. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/ipmi/logging/
[admin@nodegrid /]#set event_logging=yes
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#set event_log_frequency=1
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#set event_log_unit=hours
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#commit
```

## **Triggered Alert Strings and Custom Scripts**

Data Logging and Event Logging can be configured to collect information and create event notifications, based on custom scripts triggered by events. Defined alert strings (simple text match or regular expression pattern) are evaluated against the data source stream (during data collection). Events are generated for each match.

NOTE: Custom scripts can be created by the customer or a professional services provider.

For data log events, copy scripts to the /etc/scripts/datalog folder. For event logs, copy scripts to /etc/scripts/events folder. Each script must be executable with user privileges.

## Data Logging Alerts

#### WebUI Procedure



- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name.
- 3. Go to Logging sub-tab.

Access	Management	Logging	Custom Fields	Commands				
Managed [	Devices :: Devices :: S	erial_Console :: I	Logging					
Save Return								
	Name:	Serial_Console						
🗹 Data	Logging							
🗹 Enab	le data logging alerts							
	Data String 1:	date						
	Data Script 1:	PowerCycleDev	ice_sample.sh	÷				
	Data String 2:							
	Data Script 2:			\$				

- 4. Select Data Logging checkbox.
- 5. Select Enable data logging alerts checkbox.
- 6. In Data String 1 field, enter text to be matched against the data stream.
- 7. In Data Script 1 drop-down, select a script.
- 8. If needed, repeat in Data String 2 and Data Script 2.
- 9. Click Save.

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/logging
- 2. Use the set command to change the data\_logging value to yes.
- 3. Use the set command to change the enable\_data\_logging\_alerts value to yes.
- 4. Define for data\_string\_1 string or regular expression which will be matched against the data stream.
- 5. Define for data\_script\_1 an available script in case a custom script should be executed.
- 6. If needed, repeat for data\_string\_2 and data\_script\_2.
- 7. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Device_Console_Serial/logging/
[admin@nodegrid /]#set data_logging=yes
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#set enable_data_logging_alerts=yes
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#set data_string_1="String"
```



[+admin@nodegrid logging]#set data\_script\_1=ShutdownDevice\_sample.sh
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#commit

## **Event Logging Alerts**

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices:: Devices
- 2. Click on the Target Device.
- 3. Go to **Logging** sub-tab.
- 4. Select Event Logging checkbox.
- 5. Select Enable event logging alerts checkbox.
- 6. Define a min of one Event String to be matched against the data stream.
- 7. For a custom script, select an available script for the defined Event.

Access	Management	Logging	Custom Fields	Commands			
Managed [	Devices :: Devices :: i	ilo :: Logging					C Reload
Save	Return						
	Name:	ilo					
🗆 Data	Logging				🗹 Event Logging		
					Enable event logging alerts		
					Event String 1:	date	
					Event Script 1:	PowerCycleDevice_sample.sh	\$
					Event String 2:		
					Event Script 2:		¢

## 8. Click Save.

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/logging
- 2. Use the set command to change the event\_logging value to yes
- 3. Use the set command to adjust event\_log\_frequency and event\_log\_unit as needed:

event\_log\_frequency range from 1 - 9999

event\_log\_unit options hours or minutes

- 4. Use the set command to change the enable\_event\_logging\_alerts value to yes
- 5. For event\_string\_1, define the text string or regular expression (to be matched against the data stream).
- 6. For event\_script\_1 define an available script (if a custom script should be executed).
- 7. As needed, define event\_string\_2 and event\_script\_2.



8. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/ipmi/logging/
[admin@nodegrid /]#set event_logging=yes
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#set event_log_frequency=1
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#set event_log_unit=hours
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#set enable_event_logging_alerts=yes
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#set event_string_1="String"
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#set event_script_1=PowerCycleDevice_sample.sh
[+admin@nodegrid logging]#commit
```

## **Custom Fields**

With Custom Fields, additional information can be assigned to devices. This information is displayed on each device overview page and is searchable.

**NOTE**: Custom information is stored as a key/value pair.

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name.
- 3. Go to Custom Fields sub-tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter a Field Name.
- 6. Enter a Field Value.
- 7. Click Save.

## **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/custom\_fields
- 2. Use the add command to create a new custom field.
- 3. Use the set command to define a field\_name and field\_value.
- 4. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Serial_Console/custom_fields/
[admin@nodegrid /]#add
[+admin@nodegrid custom_fields]#set field_name=Custom_Field_Example
[+admin@nodegrid custom_fields]#set field_value="A Value"
[+admin@nodegrid custom_fields]#commit
```

## **Commands and Custom Commands**

Each device type has a collection of commands to allow access to a device of that type. Generally, the default configuration is sufficient and is the recommended option. As needed, admin users can:



Disable or change existing commands

Enable any (by default) disabled commands

Assign custom commands to a device

Remove access to specific commands from certain users or groups (with user and group authorization)

Admin changes to the default command settings affect all users and require careful consideration.

Commands available on a device depend on the device type. For example, the KVM command (enable Service Processor KVM session support) is only available to Service Processor devices. The Outlet command is available to all device types.

Custom Commands can be created with custom scripts, for all device types. Custom Commands can support for a wide range of different functions (such as additional session options and specific custom device tasks).

**NOTE**: Custom scripts can be created by the customer or a professional services provider.

While Custom Commands can be executed through the WebUI and CLI, feedback and output of Custom Commands is only available on the CLI and not on the WebUI.

Custom scripts required the following conditions:

Written in Python

"Command label" must match a function within the script

Located in /etc/scripts/custom\_commands

Custom script example:

```
# FILE NAME: custom_command.py
import os
def shell_script_global_env(dev):
   # User variables
   int var = 1234
   bool var = False
   str_var = "Hello World"
   # Setting global environment variables
   # Use lower_case format names to not change system variables accidentally
   # Use string values
   os.environ['device_name'] = dev.device_name
   os.environ['device_ip'] = dev.ip
   os.environ['int_var'] = str(int_var)
   os.environ['bool_var'] = str(bool_var)
   os.environ['str_var'] = str_var
   shell_script_path = "/etc/scripts/custom_commands/echo_environment.sh"
   # Call shell script
   os.system(shell_script_path)
```

## **Generic Change**

#### WebUI Procedure

1. Copy the custom script into /etc/scripts/custom\_commands



- 2. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 3. Click on the Target Device name.
- 4. Go to Commands sub-tab.

Access	Management	Logging	Custom Fields	Commands
Managed	Devices :: Devices :: il	o :: Commands		
Save	Cancel Return			
	Command:	KVM		\$
🗹 Enal	bled			
	Protocol:	SSH		
The co	ommand will only be av	vailable if the pro	tocol it uses is enabled u	under management.
	Type Extension:	ilo.py		ŧ

- 5. Click Add
- 6. To change or disable a command, click the **Command** and modify.
- 7. When done, click Save.

## **Device Access via RDP**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name.
- 3. Go to Commands sub-tab.

Save		
Command:	KVM	
Enabled		
Protocol:	RDP	٢
The command will only be availa	ble if the protocol it uses is enabled under management.	
Type Extension:	rdp.py	¢

- 4. Click Add.
- 5. In **Command** drop-down, select KVM.
- 6. Select Enabled checkbox.
- 7. On Protocol drop-down, select one:



- 8. On Type Extension drop-down, select one.
- 9. Click Save.

## **Custom Commands**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name.
- 3. Go to **Commands** sub-tab.
- 4. Click Add.

Access	Management	Logging	Custom Fields	Commands	
Managed [	Devices :: Devices :: i	o :: Commands			
Save	Cancel Return				
	Command:	Custom Comma	nds		\$
🗹 Enab	led				
	Protocol:	None			
The co	mmand will only be a	vailable if the proto	ocol it uses is enabled (	under management.	
Custo	m Commands				
Script:	SSH.py	🗘 🗹 Ena	abled	Command Label:	SSH
Script:		€ Ena	abled	Command Label:	customcommand2
Script:		t D Ena	abled	Command Label:	customcommand3

- 5. In Command drop-down, select Custom Commands.
- 6. Select Enable checkbox.
- 7. In Custom Commands menu, Script drop-down, select one.
- 8. Next to drop-down, select Enabled checkbox.
- 9. Adjust **Command Label** to match the command option in the script.
- 10. As needed, repeat for additional Scripts.
- 11. Click Save.

### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. Go to /settings/devices/<Device Name>/commands
- 2. Use the add command to create a new custom field.
- 3. Use the set command to define a field\_name and field\_value.



4. Save the changes with commit

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# /settings/devices/Serial_Console/commands/
[admin@nodegrid /]#add
[+admin@nodegrid commands]#set command=custom_commands
[+admin@nodegrid commands]#set custom_command_enabled1=yes
[+admin@nodegrid commands]#set custom_command_script1=SSH.py
[+admin@nodegrid commands]#set custom_command_label1=SSH
[+admin@nodegrid commands]#commit
```

## **Console-like Access**

This feature integrates Out-of-Band and Console-like configurations with the In-Band command.

## **SSH Configuration**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name.
- 3. Go to Commands sub-tab.
- 4. On the **Command** drop-down, select **SSH**.

L. Access	X Tracking	<b>C</b> System	Network Mana	aged Devices	Cluster	Security	Auditing	네일 Dashboard	
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Discovery	Preferences	;				
Access	Management	Logging	Custom Fields	Commands					
Managed D	evices :: Devices :	:: demo :: Comn	nands						
Save	ancel Return								
		Command:	SSH						\$
🗹 Enabl	ed								
		Protocol:	None						
SSH									
		User:	%USER						
		IP Address:	%IP						
		Port Number:	22						

- 5. Select **Enabled** checkbox.
- 6. In the SSH menu, modify as needed.
- 7. Click Save.



## **Telnet Configuration**

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.
- 2. Click on the Target Device name.
- 3. Go to Commands sub-tab.
- 4. On the **Command** drop-down, select **Telnet**.

	<b>R</b> Tracking	<b>O</b> System	Network Man	aged Devices	Cluster		Auditing	୍ଲାହ Dashboard	
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Discovery	Preferenc	es				
Access	Management	Logging	Custom Fields	Command	İs				
Managed De	Managed Devices :: Devices :: demo :: Commands								
Save	ancel Return								
		Command:	Telnet						0
🗹 Enable	ed								
		Protocol:	None						
Telnet									
		User:	%USER						
		IP Address:	%IP						
		Port Number:	23						

- 5. Select Enabled checkbox.
- 6. In the *Telnet* menu, modify as needed.
- 7. Click Save.

## Views tab

In *Managed Devices :: Views*, an admin can create and manage a device-based tree structure. This can be configured for specific organizational or physical structure layouts.

Groups may also be used to aggregate monitoring values like a rack or room level.

## **Preferences tab**

The Preference menu allows administrators to further define Power Menu and Session Preferences options. These are global settings and will affect all sessions.

## Power Menu sub-tab

Administrators can configure preferences for defined order and labeling of the power menu as it appears in a console session.

# ))(t zpe

## Session Preferences sub-tab

The **Disconnect HotKey** can be defined for console sessions. This feature is useful when multiple sessions are open, i.e., a console session started from within a console session; or cascaded console sessions.

Often, it is difficult to exist a specific console session without affecting other sessions in the chain. The Disconnect HotKey closes the current active session in a chain.

If **Terminate session** is enabled, the Disconnect HotKey closes all connected sessions – and the user is returned to the main shell prompt.

ŋ)(t no	odeg	rid®		۹		💄 admin@no	odegrid.localdomai	n <b>→                                    </b>	එ Logout
L Access	<b>X</b> Tracking	<b>O</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	ြာ Security	Auditing	্রাণ্র Dashboard	
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Discov	very Preference	ces				
Power Menu	Session	n Preferences	Views						
Managed Dev	vices :: Prefere	nces :: Session	Preferences						C Reload
Save	Disconne	ct HotKey:							
	🗌 Termi	nate session							

## Views sub-tab

## Change Column Preferences

1. Go to Managed Devices :: Preferences :: Views.

200	odegi	rid				٩		Ladmin@nodegrid.localdomain →	Help	C Logout
	<b>R</b> Tracking	ر System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	Auditing	্রাণ্ড Dashboard			
Devices	Views	Types	Auto Disc	overy Preferenc	ies					
ower Menu	Session	Preferences	Views							
anaged De	evices :: Preferer	nces :: Views								C Reload
Pred Groups Serial Port KVM Port End Point Port Alias	efined Columns		Add ►							

2. To change table column sequence, in the drop-down, select and drag a column title to the new position.

**NOTE**: Column selections and arrangements are stored locally on your computer. The personal column layout is not available when logged into another device.

3. When done, click **Save**.

## Step 1 – Create a custom column

For additional organization of connected devices, custom columns can be created and enabled.

- 1. Go to Managed Devices :: Preferences :: Views.
- 2. In the Custom Columns text box, enter the name.

Custom Columns:	Department

3. To add multiple columns, separate each name with a comma.

Custom Columns:	Department, Region

4. Click Save.

**NOTE**: The new custom column(s) do not appear on the *Access::Devices* page until the associated device and column is enabled.

## Step 2 – Associate device to the new column

1. Go to Managed Devices :: Devices.



- 2. Click the device name to be associated.
- 3. Click **Custom Fields**.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter a Field Name and a Field Value.

Field Name:	Department	
Field Value:	ІТ	

**NOTE**: The Field Name must exactly match the name entered in the *Custom Columns* dialog.

6. Click Save.

# **Cluster Section**

Cluster establishes a secure and resilient connection with a set of other Nodegrid devices. When enabled, a Nodegrid device that is part of the Cluster can access and manage other devices. By logging into any Nodegrid device, all devices in the Cluster can be reached with a single interface. This allows for vertical and horizontal scalability.

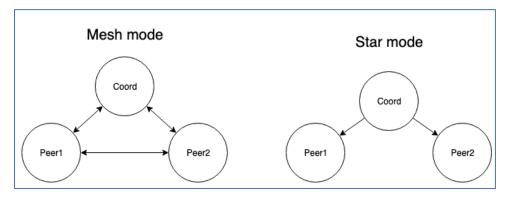
There are two types of clustering topologies:

## STAR

This is the default option. In a star configuration, one Nodegrid unit acts as the coordinator and central node. All the other peers connect to the coordinator in a star formation. Only the coordinator has the list of all peers and attached devices within the configuration. This option allows centralized access and visibility from the coordinator Nodegrid device.

#### MESH

In ihis configuration, one Nodegrid unit acts as the coordinator and all Nodegrid units (coordinator and peers) see each other (and all attached devices). This option allows for distributed access. Each unit keeps a list of all peers and attached devices and demands equal system resources of all devices. This configuration is recommended for clusters of less than 50 units.



## Peers tab

This lists all Nodegrid devices enrolled in the cluster. The table shows information on each device. To remove a peer device, select it and click **Remove**. The Coordinator device cannot be removed.

## **Cluster Settings tab**

This configures Cluster settings and additional services such as Peer Management and License Pool.

**NOTE:** The Cluster feature requires a software license for each node in the cluster.

## Enable Cluster

Cluster is activated when the Enable Cluster checkbox is selected.

Each Cluster requires one Coordinator (controls enrollment of peer systems).

The first unit in the Cluster must be set as type Coordinator. All other units are then set to type Peer. A Peer device can be set to the Coordinator role when the Type of Coordinator is selected. The change is automatically propagated and the previous Coordinator device is changed to Peer.

On the Coordinator device, ensure Allow Enrollment checkbox is selected. This provides a Cluster Name and Pre-Shared Key to enroll peers. For Cluster Mode, select Star or Mesh.

**NOTE:** The Cluster Name and the Pre-Shared Key will be used in the Peer's settings.

On the Peer device, enter the Coordinator's Cluster Name, Coordinator's Address, and the Pre-Shared Key.

Select the Enable Clustering checkbox to allow other Nodegrid systems to manage, access, and search all managed devices from other nodes.

**NOTE**: In **MESH**, the Coordinator is only required for the enrollment of the peers. Once all Nodegrid systems were enrolled in the Cluster, the Coordinator can be set as Peers to prevent the enrollment of other units.

## Automatic Enrollment

This allows administrators to automatically add new Nodegrid systems which become available to an existing cluster. For Peers, this is enabled by default for Peers. The Pre-Shared Key setting needs to be the same on the Coordinator (set by default to nodegrid-key). The Interval [seconds] setting only



applies to the Coordinator, and regulates how often invitations are sent to potential peers. This is based on the defined network list.

After the Coordinator is enabled and configured, the admin user can add a range of IPs for other Nodegrid devices on the network. To add network ranges for the discovery process, go to the Cluster Settings tab, Automatic Enrollment Range. This range eliminates the need to go to each Nodegrid node and manually set each as peers.

**NOTE:** It is recommended to only add IP's to the Automatic Enrollment Range which are potentially Nodegrid units. When set, invitations are continually sent to all IP's until a Nodegrid device is identified on a specific IP, and added to the Cluster.

## License Pool

This allows central management of all software licenses within a cluster. At least one device must to be configures as the License Pool Server. In STAR mode, this must be the Coordinator.

License Pool Clients automatically request required licenses from the License Pool Server which checks license availability, and assign as available). The Client sends a renew request based on the server's Renew Time [days] setting. If a client becomes unavailable for an extended period of time (exceeds the servers Lease Time [days]), that client's licenses become invalid on the client. The license is returned to the pool. Lease Time [days] option accepts values from 7-30 days. Go to System :: Licenses for a current list.

**NOTE**: Each Nodegrid device is shipped with five additional test target licenses. A test license is used automatically when a target license is added to the system. This also applies if a target license is applied on the License Pool Server. The first time a device requests target licenses, it request five additional licenses to cover the currently used test licenses.

## Peer Management

This is a function to centrally upgrade firmware of Nodegrid devices in the cluster. To enable the feature, select Enable Peer Management.

On the cluster's Management page, the software upgrade process can be started for remote devices from this central location. The firmware to be applied to the units must be hosted on a central location, available through a URL.

**NOTE**: The URL should include the remote server's IP or hostname, file path, and the ISO file. For example: ftp://192.168.2.200/nodegrid/Nodegrid\_Platform\_v3.1.0\_20160127.iso

The list includes all Nodegrid systems in the Cluster. If the status shows Disabled, that device has Peer Management disabled.

To update firmware, select devices with Management Status as Idle. Then click on the Software Upgrade button. Select Remote Server and enter URL, Username, and Password. If the option Format partitions before upgrade is selected, the device's hard drive will be formatted before installing the firmware upgrade.

## Downgrading

To use the restore configuration option, the Nodegrid software version must match the version used to create the restoration file. For example: if the configuration file was created in version 4.2 and Nodegrid



is currently on version 5.0, Nodegrid must be downgraded to version 4.2 before the restoration file can be used.

To downgrade to a previous version of the Nodegrid software, two options are available:

- Restore to factory default
- Restore configuration

# **Security Section**

Authentication validates the user, usually done with credentials. Credentials most often take the form of a username and password.

Authorization is an essential security feature that complements authentication. Once authenticated with credentials, authorization determines access (i.e., directories, functions, features, and displays).

Nodegrid devices have a built-in admin user account named 'admin'. This has full access and rights to all configurable unit functions: network, security, authentication, authorization, managed devices, including other users. This special user account, 'admin' cannot be deleted. The initial default password 'admin'.

**NOTE**: For security reasons, administrators are strongly advised to change the default password during the first login. Use the Change Password option on the pull-down menu under the username (upper right corner of the WebUI).

The Nodegrid Platform fully the supports Authentication of local users and groups, as well as external users and groups. External authentication of users and groups can be done through LDAP/AD, Tacacs+, Radius and Kerberos.

All users have access to enabled managed devices by default. Fine Grain Authorization can be available when the option Device access enforced via user group authorization (under Services section) is enabled.

Based on assigned groups, users have limited access to Nodegrid Web portal management attributes. User privileges can be modified with profile and access rights in an authorization group. A user in the Admin group has the same administrative privileges as the initial admin user. Each user must have a specific user account on a Nodegrid device. An external authentication server can provide authenticated access. A user can be assigned to one or more authorization groups.

## Local Accounts tab

New local users can be added, deleted, changed, and locked under *Security :: Local Accounts*. Administrators can force passwords to be changed upon next login, and set expiration dates for user accounts. Regardless of activation options, users can change their passwords at any time. Administrators can manage API keys for each account.

- User name and password
- Hash format password (optional)
- Account expiration (optional)



• Groups, the user is a member

## Manage Local Users

Local users are available at Security :: Local Accounts. These options are available:

Add (new users can be added)

Edit (change user settings)

**Delete** (remove a user)

Lock (existing users can be locked to prevent login in)

Unlock (locked user account can be unlocked)

## Add Local User

- 1. Go to Security :: Local Accounts.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Enter User Name.
- 4. Enter Password.

If the password is in a hash format, select **Hash Format Password** checkbox.

- 5. (optional) Enter Account Expiration Date.
- 6. (optional) Select Require password change at login time checkbox.
- 7. (optional) Choose the group name from left box, click Add.

To remove a user group, select and click Remove.

8. Click Save.

## Hash Format Password

The administrator can use a has format password, rather than plain password. Apply this feature if needed. This can be used for scripts, to avoids requiring scripts to use actual user passwords.

The hash password must be generated separately beforehand. Use a hash password generator. These applications (OpenSSL, chpasswd, mkpasswd) use MD5, SHA256, SHA512 engines..

The Nodegrid Platform has an OpenSSL version. In the CLI use this:

```
root@nodegrid:~# openssl passwd -1 -salt mysall
Password:
$1$mysall$YBFr9On0wjde5be32mC1g1
```

## **API Keys**

Administrator can generate or revoke API keys for each user. To access, go to Security :: Local Accounts :: <nameofuser> and click Manage API Key.



L Access	<b>X</b> Tracking	<b>JO</b> System	Network	Manage	d Devices	Cluster	
Local Acc	ounts	Password Rules	Author	ization	Authenti	cation	
Security ::	Local Accoun	ts :: mary					
Save	Save Cancel Manage API Key						
	Username:	mary					
Password:							
Confir	rm password:						

NOTE: In the example above, the name of the user is "mary"

## Generate a new API key for a user

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Security :: Local Accounts.
- 2. Locate and click the user's name.

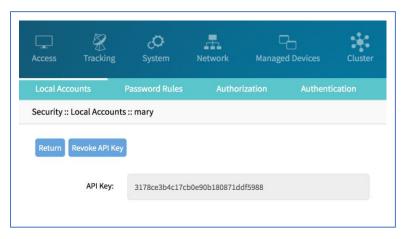
E.

L. Access	<b>R</b> Tracking	<b>O</b> System	Network	C Manage	d Devices	Cluster
Local Acc	ounts	Password Rules	Author	ization	Authenti	cation
Security ::	Security :: Local Accounts :: mary					
Return	Return Generate API Key					
	API Key:					

3. Click Generate API Key.

The new key is displayed in the API Key field.





NOTE: After an API key is generated for a user, the button changes to Revoke API Key.

## **Password Rules tab**

When password rules are configured for the Nodegrid Platform, all local user accounts are subject. To setup, go to Security :: Password Rules. The administrator can set password complexity as well as password expiration.

Setting	Value	Description
Check Password Complexity	True/False	Enable/disable password complexity rules (default: disabled).
Password Complexity - Minimum Number of Digits	Number	Minimum number of digits to include in the password (default: 0).
Recovered Complexity Minimum	Number	Minimum number of upper engage to include in the password

## **Password Rules Options**

Password Complexity - Minimum Number of Digits	Number	Minimum number of digits to include in the password (default: 0).
Password Complexity - Minimum Number of Upper Case Characters	Number	Minimum number of upper cases to include in the password (default: 0).
Password Complexity - Minimum Number of Special Characters	Number	Minimum number of special characters to include in the password (default: 0).
Password Complexity - Minimum Size	Number	Minimum number of characters included in the password (default: 8).
Password Complexity - Number of Passwords to Store in History	Number	Number of passwords stored in password history. Prevents reuse of previous passwords (default: 1).
Password Expiration - Min Days	Number	Number of days the password must be valid for before it can be changed (default: 0).
Password Expiration - Max Days	Number	Maximum number of days a password can be valid for changing (default: 99999).
Password Expiration - Warning Days	Number	Number of days users is notified before password expires (default: 7).

# j)(t zpe

## Authorization tab

User groups combine multiple local and remote users into a single local group. Members are assigned group-specific roles/permissions. Members have access to devices assigned to that group. Groups which are authenticated against an external authentication provider are mapped to local groups. When a user is assigned to a group, that user received the combined access rights. Administrators can add and delete groups, as well as change permissions.

## Manage Groups

During a first time login, two groups are available in the default configuration, Admin and Users. The Admin group grants the user full system and target access. The Users group grants all members full access to all targets with the disabled default of Fine Grain Authorization. When Fine Grain Authorization is enabled, User group members have no access to any target device.

Administrators can create, edit and delete groups under Security :: Authorization.

## **Group Permissions**

Permission	Description
Track System Information	Grants access to tracking information. See "Tracking".
Terminate Sessions	Grants permission to terminal user and device sessions.
Software Upgrade and Reboot System	Grants permission to perform system upgrades and reboots.
Configure System	Grants admin rights to change the system configuration.
Configure User Account	Grants permissions to change the Authorization setting.
Apply & Save Settings	Grants permissions to save settings.
Shell Access	Grants access to the system shell.

## System Permissions

## **System Permission Settings**

Setting	Value	Description
Permissions	Track System Information Terminate Sessions Software Upgrade and Reboot System Configure System Configure User Account Apply & Save Settings Shell Access	System Permissions.





Setting	Value	Description
Restrict Configure System Permission to Read Only	True/False	Granted system settings are visible but cannot be changed.
Menu-driven access to devices	True/False	Group members aree presented a target menu when SSH connection to the Nodegrid device is established.
Sudo permission	True/False	Allows users to execute sudo commands.
Custom Session Timeout	True/False	Enable a custom session time.
Timeout [seconds]	Number	Session timeout in seconds.
Startup application	CLI Shell	Allows administrator to set default start application when a group member connects via SSH to the Nodegrid unit (default: CLI).
Email Events to	Email Address	List of the email address to which events will be sent.

## **Create a User Group**

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Security :: Authorization.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Enter the Group Name.
- 4. Click Save.

The group has been created. To edit properties and permissions, click on the Group Name.

## Add Local Users to a Group

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Security :: Authorization.
- 2. Click the Group Name.
- 3. Click on **Members**.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. In the left box, select the user and click Add (moves selected user to this group).

To remove a user, select in right side box, click **Remove**.

## Assign Group System Permissions and Settings

## WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Security :: Authorization.
- 2. Click on the **Group Name**.



3. Click Profile.

A user group can be assigned multiple additional system permissions. All groups have by default the user permission, granting them access to the Access table, which will allow them to connect to target devices based on the specific target permissions.

**NOTE**: Multiple permissions can be assigned to the same group.

- 4. Assign permissions.
- 5. Click Save.

## Assign external groups

External groups must be assigned to a local group. This ensure the remote group gets the correct permissions.

**NOTE**: This step is required for LDAP, AD, and Kerberos groups. Radius and Tacacs authentication provider provide other methods to link external groups/users to local groups.

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Security :: Authorization.
- 2. Click on the Group Name.
- 3. Click **Remote Groups**
- 4. List the external group names separated by a comma.
- 5. Click Save.

## Assign device permissions

If Fine Grain Authorization is enabled, the permissions to access specific devices must be assigned to groups. To do this, add specific devices to a group. Then set the appropriate access rights to the target. Multiple devices can be added at the same time. Access permissions can be set together.

**NOTE**: access permissions to control power outlets are granted through the Outlets permissions and not through Devices

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Security :: Authorization.
- 2. Click on the Group Name.
- 3. Click **Devices**.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Select devices on the Available list (left side) and click **Add** (moves devices to Authorized Devices list on right.

To remove one or more devices, select on the right-side box, and click **Delete**.

- 6. Select Device Permissions.
- 7. Click Save.



## Access Permissions

Permission	Value	Description	
Session	Read-Write Read-Only No-Access	Permission to access serial or SSH sessions (Console).	
Power	Power Control Power Status No Access	Power Control permissions through IPMI.	
Door	Door Control Door Status No Access	Door Control permissions.	
МКЅ	True/False	Access to MKS sessions.	
Reset Device	True/False	Permission to reset a device session.	
кум	True/False	Access to KVM sessions.	
SP Console	True/False	Access to IPMI console sessions (Serial over Lan).	
Virtual Media	True/False	Access to start a Virtual Media session to an IPMI device.	
Access Log Audit	True/False	Access to read the access log of an IPMI device.	
Access Log Clear	True/False	Permission to clear the access log of an IPMI device.	
Event Log Audit	True/False	Permission to read the device-specific event log.	
Event Log Clear	True/False	Permission to clear the device-specific Event Log.	
Monitoring	True/False	Permission to access monitoring features.	
Sensors Data	True/False	Permission to read sensor data.	
Custom Commands	True/False	Permission to execute custom commands.	

## Assign power outlet permissions

Access permissions for power outlets from Rack PDUs are controlled individually as the power to turn on or off a device can have severe consequences for the running of a data center or remote location. The assignment of permissions is analogous to device's access permissions.

- 1. Go to Security :: Authorization.
- 2. Click on the **Group Name**.
- 3. Click Outlets.

# ))(t zpe

- 4. Click Add,
- 5. Select one or more devices in the left box. Click Add.

To remove a device from the authorized device list, select the device and click **Delete**.

6. Select desired device permissions:

**Power Control** (permission to turn on or off an outlet)

Power Status (permission to see the current outlet status)

## No Access

7. Click Save.

## **External Authentication Provider**

External authentication is enabled on the Nodegrid Platform. This can authenticate users with:

- Active Directory and LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol),
- TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus),
- RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service)
- Kerberos (based on tickets to prove identity)

These steps must be performed independently of the specific authentication provider.

## **Create an Internal Group**

## WebUI Procedure

This creates a new internal group.

- 1. Go to Security :: Authorization.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Enter the Group Name.
- 4. Click Save.

## **Assign Permissions to Group**

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Security :: Authorization.
- 2. Click on the Group Name.
- 3. Click Profile.

A user group can be assigned multiple additional system permissions. All groups have by default the user permission, granting them access to the Access table, which will allow them to connect to target devices based on the specific target permissions.

**NOTE**: Multiple permissions can be assigned to the same group.



- 4. Assign permissions.
- 5. Click Save.

## **Assign Authentication Provider**

External Authentication Provider needs to be added.

## Map External Group to Internal Group

External group is mapped to an internal group.

## SSH Key Authorization

The Nodegrid platform allows use of SSH keys for authorization. The feature is often used to allow automation systems to gain secure access without a password. It works well with direct Shell access and users who want to use SSH keys for a local home directory. This feature is available for all local, LDAP, AD and Tacacs+ users.

**NOTE**: Radius users can not use SSH keys for authentication.

## Setup SSH key authorization

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Security::Authorization.
- 2. Create a group or use an existing Group.
- 3. Click Profile.
- 4. On Startup application, select Shell.

All group members get default shell access and not CLI access on connection via SSH.

- 5. Go to Security :: Local Accounts.
- 6. Create a local user.
- 7. Add the user to the newly created group.
- 8. The user can now use the default SSH tools to copy his SSH key to the Nodegrid (i.e., SSH-copyid).
- 9. The user can use the SSH key for authentication.

### Optional

If the user needs default CLI access and not Shell access, remove the user from the newly created Group.

If the user is authorized by an external authentication provider (LDAP, AD, or TACACS+), the Local user account can be locked.

- 1. Go to Security :: Local Accounts.
- 2. Highlight the user.
- 3. Click Lock



The user can still use the sskhey for authentication but permissions are enforced based on his group permissions with the external authentication provider.

## **Authentication tab**

On *Security :: Authentication*, currently configured authentication providers are listed. The order of the providers determines which is first authenticates the user.

On a failed authentication, user access can be rejected, or the next provider can be tried (**Fallback if denied access** must be enabled). If disabled, user access is limited to the correct entry of authorization credentials for the first provider listed.

To access Nodegrid, the user must be a member of a group. If not, the user is checked against the default User group. Any group can be the user's default group if that group's **Default Group** setting is enabled (only one default group per user).

## Add a server

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Security :: Authentication :: Servers.
- 2. Click Add.

		_		.1.*				
Access Tracki		Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	ि Security	Auditing	ାଣ୍ଡି Dashboard	
Local Accounts	Password Rules	Authori	ization Auther	itication	Firewall	Services		
Servers 2-Fa								
Security :: Authentic	ation :: Servers							
Save Cancel								
×		RADIUS						1
	Method:							2
2-Fact	or Authentication:	none					+	•]
	Status:	enabled					\$	
Fallback if deni	ed access							
	(							
	Remote Server:	X0X.XXX.X0X.X0X						J
Radius								
Radius								
	Accounting Server:	3000.3000.3000.300	CX .					
	Secret:							1
								۲.
	Confirm Secret:							J
	Timeout:	2						
	Retries:	2						
Enable ServiceType attribute association to local authorization group								



- 3. Enter needed details.
- 4. Click Save.

## SSO (Single Sign-On)

With Single Sign-On (SSO) users authenticate once and gain access to multiple secured systems without resubmitting credentials. Nodegrid currently supports these Service Providers:

- Duo
- Okta
- G Suite
- Other custom SAML Identity Providers

## **Configure SSO**

### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Security :: Authentication :: SSO.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Enter these details:

Name

Status

**Identity Provider** 

SSO URL

**Entity ID** 

#### Certificate

Name:		Force Re-authentication
Status:	disabled	Sign Request
Entity ID:		Enable Single Logout
SSO URL:		
Issuer:		
X.509 Certificate:	Certificate Name Browse No file selected.	
	C Local System	
	C Remote Server	
lcon:	Select Icon 850	



#### 4. Click Save.

The following fields are required to configure a successful SAML flow for each Identity Provider:

#### **SAML** Requirements

Identity Provider (Idp)	Copy Fields from Nodegrid to IdP	Paste Fields from IDP to Nodegrid
Duo	Login URL Entity ID	SSO URL Entity ID Download Certificate
Okta	Single Sign On URL Audience URI (SP Entity ID)	Identity Provider SSO URL Identity Provider Issuer X.509 Certificate
G Suite	ACS URL Entity ID	SSO URL Entity ID Certificate

#### IdP configuration fields:

*Entity ID* (globally unique name for the SP URL)

Assertion Consumer Service (ACS) (URL in which the Identity Provider redirects the user and sends the SAML assertion after its authentication process.

*Attributes* (attributes that IdP sends back with the SAML assertion. SP can have more than one attribute, nameID is the most common.)

*SAML Signature Algorithm* (either SHA-1 or SHA-256. Used with X.509 certificate. Default: SHA-256.)

#### SP configuration fields:

*X.509 Certificate* (certificate provided by the IdP to allow the SP to verify that the SAML assertion is from the IdP)

*Issuer URL/Entity ID* (unique identifier of the IdP)

Single Sign On URL (an IdP endpoint that starts the authentication process)

*RelayState:* (optional) (deep linking for SAML. Used for <ip>/direct/<device>/console)

For more information on SSO, please see <u>https://support.zpesystems.com/portal/kb/articles/single-sign-on-sso</u>

## LDAP and Active Directory

The LDAP protocol is an open standard and there is a large variety of implementations, all similar, but bearing slight variations. LDAP examples shown are based on OpenLDAP implementation.

Microsoft's Active Directory is one of the largest and widely used implementations of LDAP. Implementation is a very complex authentication structure that reflects the internal organization of companies.



To setup this provider, go to Security :: Authentication.

**NOTE**: Features can be enabled: Fallback if denied access, Authorize users authenticated with SSH public key, and Search Nested Groups (AD only).

m			•	~					
			d Devices Cluster	Security	Auditing	୍ଲାହି Dashboard	Applications		
Local Accounts Pass	word Rules	Authorization	Authentication	Firewall	NAT	Services			
Servers 2-Factor									
ecurity :: Authentication :: Se	rvers :: 3								o
Save									
Method:	LDAP or AD				¢				
2-Factor Authentication:	none				÷				
Status:	enabled				•				
✓ Fallback if denied access									
Remote Server:	192.168.2.88								
LDAP									
Base:	dc=zpe,dc=ne	t							
<ul> <li>Authorize users authenti</li> </ul>	cated with ssh pub	lic key							
Secure:	off				\$				
Global Catalog Server									

The following information is required to set up LDAP or Active Directory authentication server.

LDAP/Active Directory Options

Field	Values	Description
Status	True/False	The provider is used to authenticate users (default: enabled).
Fallback if denied access	Enabled or Disabled	It is recommended to enable this, if the provider is not available (default: disabled).
Remote Server	FQDN or IP of LDAP server or domain	Nodegrid supports resolution of Active Directory Servers through DNS requests. This means that specific Active Directory Servers can be listed, or a valid Active Directory Domain is listed. If AD Doman is listed, the System contacts the closest server, based on the DNS results.
Base	Base DN	This can be the Root DN or a sublevel DN. This marks the highest point used to search for users or groups.
Authorize users authenticated with SSH public key	Enabled or Disabled	(default: disabled).
Secure	On, Off or Start_TLS	Traffic between the Nodegrid and LDAP server is sent unencrypted. <i>"On" is recommended.</i> (This feature must be supported by the server.) (default: off).





Field	Values	Description
Global Catalog Server	True/False	If enabled, the provider uses an Active Directory Global Catalog Server
Database Username	Search User Name	Full Qualified username (used to search through the directory). Only required if the LDAP server requires authentication for directory browsing,
Database Password and Confirm Password	Password for the search user	Only required if the LDAP server requires authentication for directory browsing
Login Attribute	Field identifies the username	Contains the username. For Active Directory, default is sAMAccountName.
Group Attribute	Field identifies the group names	Contains the group identifier. For Active Directory, default is memberOf.
Search Filter	Search Filter following the LDAP implementation	Filter used for search queries.
Search Nested Groups (AD only)	Enabled or Disabled	Disabled by Default

### Example: OpenLDAP Configuration

Field	Value
Status	True
Fallback if denied access	True
Remote Server	192.168.1.1
Base	dc=zpe, dc=net
Secure	Off
Global Catalog Server	False
Database Username	cn=admin, dc=zpe, dc=net
Login Attribute	cn
Group Attribute	member, UID

### Example: Active Directory Configuration

Field	Value
Status	True

# ))(t zpe

Field	Value	
Fallback if denied access	True	
Remote Server	192.168.1.1	
Base	dc=zpesystems, dc=com	
Secure	Start TLS	
Global Catalog Server	True	
Database Username	cn=Administrator, cn=Users, dc=zpesystems, dc=com	
Login Attribute	sAMAccountName	
Group Attribute	memberOf	

More information on how to setup LDAP and Active Directory can be found in the KB article: <u>How to</u> <u>Configure Active Directory or LDAP Authentication Provider</u>.

**NOTE**: Permissions may be configured to restrict LDAP/AD users to access certain features within Nodegrid. Full login access cannot be blocked for specific LADP/AD users.

# TACACS +

TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus) is a protocol developed by Cisco and released as an open standard beginning in 1993. Although derived from TACACS, TACACS+ is a separate protocol that handles authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) services. TACACS+ and other flexible AAA protocols have largely replaced their predecessors.

**NOTE**: This page can set options such as **Fallback if denied access**, **Authorize users authenticated with SSH public key**, and **Enable User-Level attribute of Shell** and raccess services association to local authorization group.



Access Tracking	<b>رت</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	ि Security	Auditing	II일 Dashboard	Applications
Local Accounts	Password Rule	s Author	ization Authen	tication	Firewall	NAT	Services	
Servers 2-Factor								
Security :: Authentication	on :: Servers :: 2							
Save Cancel								
Met	thod: TACACS	;+				٢		
2-Factor Authentica	tion: none					+		
0	atus: enabled	1				•		
🛃 Fallback if denied a	ccess							
Remote Se	rver: 192.16	3.2.88						
Tacacs+								
Accountings	Server: 192.1	68.2.88						
🕑 Authorize users a	uthenticated with	ssh public key						
TACACS	+ Port: 49							
						•		
S	ervice: racce	15				•		
:	Secret:							

### **TACACS+** Options

Field	Values	Description
Status	Enabled/Disabled	The provider will be used to authenticate users (default: enabled).
Fallback if denied access	Enabled or Disabled	Recommended: enable this feature if the provider is not available (default: disabled)
Remote Server	IP address	
Accounting Server	IP address	
Authorize users authenticated with SSH public key	Enabled or Disabled	(default: disabled).
TACACS+ Port	TCP Port	(default port: 49).
Service	pppshellraccess	Authentication service used by TACACS (default: raccess).
Secret/Confirm Secret	Secret	
Timeout	Number	Communication timeout in seconds (default: 2)
Retries	Number	Number of retries before connection fails.
TACACS+ Version	V0V1V0_V1V1_V0	TACACS version to be used (default:V1).



Field	Values	Description
Enable User-Level attribute of Shell and raccess services association to local authorization group	True/False	
User Level 1 - 10	Nodegrid group name	

# RADIUS

RADIUS is a client/server protocol that runs in the application layer and uses TCP or UDP as transport. Operating on port 1812, it provides centralized Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) management for users.

The Nodegrid Platform allows multiple methods to assign Radius users to Nodegrid groups. Configuration settings include:

Radius Service Types can be assigned to Nodegrid groups using the settings in the Authentication provider

On the Radius server, the attribute Framed-Filter-ID may be used to assign a user to a Nodegrid group Example: Framed-Filter-ID = "group\_name=<ng-groupname>[,<ng-groupname1>];"

Nodegrid supports Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSA) for authorization purposes. Two properties must be defined on the Radius server:

VENDOR ZPE 42518

ATTRIBUTE ZPE-User-Groups 1 string

Each authorized user needs the ZPE-User-Groups attribute assigned. The value is a comma-separated list of Nodegrid Group names.

#### FreeRadius Server Configuration

#### **CLI Procedure**

This is an example.

1. Create the file "/usr/share/freeradius/dictionary.zpe" with the content listed below:

```
VENDOR ZPE 42518
BEGIN-VENDOR ZPE
ATTRIBUTE ZPE-User-Groups 1 string
END-VENDOR ZPE
```

2. Edit the file "/usr/share/freeradius/dictionary". In the file, add a line with dictionary.zpe (suggested location).

\$INCLUDE dictionary.zpe
\$INCLUDE dictionary.jradius



3. In /etc/freeradius/users, assign user groups. Define the "Framed-Filter-ID" attribute (as before) or define a new attribute "ZPE-User-Groups".

**NOTE**: If both attributes are defined, "ZPE-User-Groups" takes precedence.

rad-edmond Cleartext-Password := "\*\*\*\*"
Service-Type = Framed-User,
Framed-Protocol = PPP,
Framed-Filter-Id = "group\_name=filter-grp1, filter-grp2;",
ZPE-User-Groups = "vsa-grp1, vsa-grp2",
Framed-MTU = 1500,
Framed-Compression = Van-Jacobsen-TCP-IP

#### **Radius Options**

Field	Values	Description
Status	True/False	This provider is used to authenticate users (default: enabled).
Fallback if denied access	Enabled or Disabled	Recommendation: enable this feature if the provider is not available (default: disabled).
Remote Server	IP address	
Accounting Server	IP Address	
Secret / Confirm Secret	Secret	
Timeout	Number	Communication timeout in seconds (default: 2).
Retries	Number	Number of retries before connection fails
Enable ServiceType attribute association to local authorization group	True/False	Allows assignment of Radius Service Types to Nodegrid local groups.
Service Type Login	Nodegrid group name	
Service Type Framed	Nodegrid group name	
Service Type Callback Login	Nodegrid group name	
Service Type Callback Framed	Nodegrid group name	
Service Type Outbound	Nodegrid group name	



Field	Values	Description
Service Type Administrative	Nodegrid group name	

## Kerberos

Kerberos is a computer network authentication protocol that uses tickets to allow nodes to securely communicate over a non-secure network. Designed primarily as a client–server model, it provides mutual authentication between nodes. The user and the server verify each other's identity. Built on symmetric key cryptography a trusted third party is required (optionally, public-key cryptography may be used). UDP port 88 is used by default.

#### **Kerberos Options**

Field	Values	Description
Status	True/False	This provider is used to authenticate users (default: enabled).
Fallback if denied access	Enabled or Disabled	Recommendation: enable this feature if the provider is not available (default: disabled).
Remote Server	IP address	
Realm Domain Name	Kerberos realm name	
Domain Name	domain name	

## RSA SecurID, 2-factor authentication

#### Add SecurID Server

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Login as admin and go to: Security :: Authentication.
- 2. On the **2-Factor** sub-tab, click **Add**.
- 3. Enter the details:

Name (name to identify the SecurID system, i.e., SecurID)

**Rest URL** (URL to access the SecurID Authentication API (format: https://:5555/mfa/v1\_1/authn)

**Enable Replicas** (Rest Service URL to failover to the server. Can be up to 15 replicas. One per line, i.e., rsa-am-replica2.zpesystems.com:4444, 192.168.2.229:5555)

**Client Key** (available through RSA Security Console. Copy/paste the **Access Key** from *SecurID Security Console*. The Access Key is also available at RSA SecurID Authentication API (under System Settings)

# j)(t zpe

	CONSOLE								Logged on as: zper	sa <u>My Permission</u>	is I <u>My Preferences</u> I Log
Home Identity -	Authentication -	Access 👻	Reporting -	RADIUS -	Administration -	Setup 🔹	Help 🝷				
Authentication	Settings										Help on this page +
RSA SecurID A	uthentication A	PI									
The Authentication Manage  The Authentication Manage  The Authentication API:  Agent Credentials:	u configure and app Apply Settings C Enable Authent Access ID : ***	tication API	on API settings c	on the primary		t click "Apply S *****				ger.	
② Communication Port:	5555										
Cancel Reset A	Apply Settings										
				Copyright ©	1994-2018 Dell Inc.	or its subsidiaries.	All Rights Reserve	ed.			

Client ID (retrieve the Server Node name from the Authentication Manager Contact List.)

Home Identity <del>-</del> Authenticat	on 👻	Access - Reporting	▼ RADIUS ▼	Administration	- Setup -	Help 👻		
Authentication Manager	Con	Active User Sessions						(2) Help on this page -
Authentication Manager contact lists are	hentication Manager contact lists are associate		Manage Existing		Manager(s) the agent			
Search Criteria	Sear	ch Results	Add New					
	1 items found.		Generate Configuration	File				
Where: Name \$		Delete	Download Server Certif	icate File				Show 25 ¢ per pa
starts with \$		Authentication Manager Conta	Authentication Manager	Authentication Manager Contact List			Notes	
		rsa-am.zpesystems.com	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Manage Existing	.com	Automatic server list for instance: rsa-am.zpesystems.com	
Search		Authentication Manager Cont	act List Automatic		ADD NEW	t Notes		
	Delete				Automatic Rebalance			Show 25 ¢ per pa

4. Select Cloud Authentication Service checkbox (if enabled, two required fields display).

Enable Cloud Authentication Service	
Policy ID:	
Tenant ID:	

**Policy ID** (access policy name configured in the Cloud Administration Console. Obtain this name from your Cloud Authentication Service Super Admin)

**Tenant ID** (Tenant Id name created in the Cloud Administration Console. Obtain this name from your Cloud Authentication Service Super Admin)

# ))(t zpe

				ster Security		Dashboard	
a construction of the second	Password Rules	Authorization	Authentication	Firewall	NAT	Services	
Servers 2-Factor	n :: 2-Factor						Ø Reio
Save Cancel							
	Name:	SecuriD				Note #1	
		RSA					
	Status:	enabled					8
RSA							
	Rest URL:	Calendari en en este este este este este este est		N120.		Note #2	
	Rest URL:	https://rsa-am.zpesyster	ms.com/3005/mfa/v1_1/	authn		Note #2	
Enable Replicas	Note #3						
	Client Key:					Note #4	
	Client ID:	rsa-am.zpesystems.com				Note #5	
Enable Cloud Aut	entication Service	Note #6					
Read Tim	eout (seconds):	120					
Connect Tim	eout [seconds]:	20					

5. Click Save.

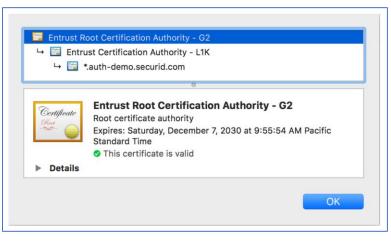
#### Set Certificate to access SecurID Server

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. If RSA server is through Cloud Authentication, go to RSA SecurID Access, and click on the **Lock** icon (next to URL).
- 2. Locate and click on the Certificate.
- 3. On the pop-up dialog, click on the first/top certificate, and drag it to your desktop (this copies it to your desktop).
- 4. Upload certificate Nodegrid (certificate is automatically converted to the expected format).

Connection is secure	×	NG3.2 🍿	NG4.0	S wiki	🧕 Jenkins GUI	🔏 Spi
Your information (for example, pa card numbers) is private when it i site. Learn more						
Location	Allow 🔻	-				
Certificate (Valid)		<b>RS</b> A	SEC	JRID <sup>®</sup> A	ACCESS	
Cookies (8 in use)			му	Page		
Site settings						
	Emai	Address				
	Ne	ext				





5. If not via Cloud, go the RSA Operations Console and download the Signing Root Certificate.

-	OPERATIONS CONSC	DLE			Instance Type: [Primary] Log. Hostname: rsa-am.zpesystems.
Home	Deployment Configuration •	Maintenance - Admini	istration - Help	*	
🌁 Ins	Identity Sources	ems.com			(2) Help on this page -
You are lo	Instances •	ne Operations Console provides	configuration and main	ntenance utilities for your deployment.	
My Conse	Certificates •	Application Trust Certificates	Manage Existin	ng Help & Status	
> Mana	Web-Tier Deployments	Console Certificate Managemen	nt Add New	> All Help Topics	
> Crea	Virtual Host & Load Balancing	Virtual Host Certificate Manage	ement	> RSA Link	
> Flush	Replica Promotion			Replication Status Report	
	RADIUS Servers	-			
	RSA SecurID Authenticate App	-			
	KSK Security Authenticate App				
			Copyri	ght © 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	
SAG	PERATIONS CONSO	LE			Instance Type: [Primary] Log
					Hostname: rsa-am.zpesystems.
lome I	Deployment Configuration +	Maintenance - Adminis	stration 👻 Help	÷.	
Appl	lication Trust Certificat	Add New Certificate			(2) Help on this page -
		by a trusted certificate authority	v.		
items found					
					Show 25 \$ per p
riendly Na	ime	Administrative Vali Account	d To Sub	pject	Notes
RSA Con	sole Server Application Trust -	trustedano 1/1/	37 12:00:00 AM SER	RIALNUMBER=483968035d6be8ac3b8622f6444bab63d1fb892cfc99f8d81fb3150a3cd24a81, CN=RSA Console	RSA Console Server Applica
rie Dov	unland	F31		ver Application Trust	Trust Notes
	whitedu	miniscrative vali			
View		initiative van			
View	w	ount Van			
View	w t	ount			
ite	w t lete	ount		pit © 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 ¢ per p
ite	w t	ount			Show 25 ¢ per p
	w t tete PERATIONS CONSOL	LE		pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 ¢ per p
	w t lete	LE	Copyrig	pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 ¢ per p
	w t tete PERATIONS CONSOL	E Maintenance • Adminis	Copyrig	pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 ¢ per p
ite Celit Ce	w t lete PERATIONS CONSOI Deployment Configuration +	E Maintenance • Adminis t Certificate	Copyrig	pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 ¢ per p Instance Type: [Primary] Loc Hostname: rsa-am.rpesystem
ite Edit Edit Dele SAO Downe D Down ownload the	w t t t ete PERATIONS CONSOI Jeployment Configuration  Inload Application Trus e application trust certificate an	E Maintenance • Adminis t Certificate	Copyrig	pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 ¢ per p Instance Type: [Primary] Lo Hostname: rsa-am.rpesystem
ite Course Cours	w t t t PERATIONS CONSOI apployment Configuration  nload Application Trus e application trust certificate an I Files	LE Maintenance - Adminis t Certificate d signing root certificate.	Copyrig	pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 ¢ per p Instance Type: [Primary] Lo Hostname: rsa-am.rpesystem
ite Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Ce	w t t t PERATIONS CONSOI Deployment Configuration onload Application Trus e application trust certificate an f Files ation trust certificate is ready to	LE Maintenance - Adminis t Certificate d signing root certificate.	Copyrig	pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 b per p Instance Type: [Primary] Loo Hostname: rsa-am.zpesystem
ite Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Celit Ce	w t t t PERATIONS CONSOL poployment Configuration * nload Application Trus e application trust certificate an J Files ation trust certificate is ready to ne: AppTrust.cer	LE Maintenance - Adminis t Certificate d signing root certificate.	Copyrig	pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 b per p Instance Type: [Primary] Loo Hostname: rsa-am.zpesystem
ite Color Come D Come D Cownload the Download the Download	w t t t PERATIONS CONSOL poployment Configuration * nload Application Trus e application trust certificate an J Files ation trust certificate is ready to the: AppTrust.cer	LE Maintenance - Adminis t Certificate d signing root certificate.	Copyrig	pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 ¢ per p Instance Type: [Primary] Loc Hostname: rsa-am.rpesystem
Le Celle Cel	w t t t PERATIONS CONSOL poployment Configuration * nload Application Trus e application trust certificate an J Files ation trust certificate is ready to ne: AppTrust.cer	eunt LE Maintenance  Adminis t Certificate d signing root certificate. download.	Copyrig	pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 ¢ per p Instance Type: [Primary] Loc Hostname: rsa-am.rpesystem
Le Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Celle Cel	w t t t PERATIONS CONSOL Poployment Configuration * nload Application Trus e application trust certificate is ready to the: AppTrust.cer ad: Download Now A certificate is ready to download	eunt LE Maintenance  Adminis t Certificate d signing root certificate. download.	Copyrig	pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 b per p Instance Type: [Primary] Loo Hostname: rsa-am.zpesystem
ite Control Co	w t t t etee PERATIONS CONSOI Deployment Configuration  Poload Application Truss e application trust certificate is Files tation trust certificate is ready to common Acertificate is ready to downloa K certificate is ready to downloa	eunt LE Maintenance  Adminis t Certificate d signing root certificate. download.	Copyrig	pt () 1994-2018 Dell Inc. or its subsidiaries. All Rights Reserved.	Show 25 b per p Instance Type: [Primary] Loo Hostname: rsa-am.zpesystem

- 6. To upload certificate, login to WebUI (if needed).
- 7. Go to Security :: Authentication.
- 8. On the **2-Factor** sub-tab, click the link representing the SecurID server (added in step above)..

# ))(t zpe

- 9. Click Certificate.
- 10. Select Local Computer checkbox, and click Choose File.
- 11. Browse to the certificate location and select it (i.e. RootCA.cer file).
- 12. Click Apply,

#### Assign 2-factor to an Authentication Method

RSA SecurID 2-factor authentication can be added to any of the Nodegrid-supported authentication methods: Local, LDAP/AD, Radius, Tacacs, or Kerberos.

Nodegrid authenticates users following the order of the authentication servers, as configured. When a method succeeds (user authenticated), Nodegrid initiates the 2-factor authentication (if configured).

The user receives a request from RSA SecurID to provide the token code and PIN (according to the setup on the user's RSA Security Console). The process is applied on user login via Web Browser, SSH, Telnet or Console port.

	8 acking	System	Network	Managed		Cluster	Security	Auditing	ير Dashboard	
ocal Accounts		Password Rules	Author		Authenti		Firewall	Services	Basilboard	
	-Factor	-assword Rules	Aution	1281.1011	Authenti	Cation	Filewall	Services		
Save Cancel			onfiguratio	on.						
		:: 1 :: Servers tion - none c Method:	Configuratio	on						
Save Cancel	nentica	tion - none c Method:		on						

**NOTE**: For Local authentication method, 2-factor can be enforced or skipped. This allows local Nodegrid administrators to login without needing to configure counterpart users in the RSA Security Console.

#### Configure a user in Nodegrid local accounts

When 2-factor is enabled, the user provides credentials and the pass code to access Nodegrid. Users must be configured on the RSA Security Console.

#### WebUI Procedure

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



- 1. Go to Security :: Local Accounts.
- 2. Click Add.

(t nodegrid									<b>≜</b> admin@ni	c-rsa.zpesystems.com +	• Help	
	Network		Cluster	Security		Laff Dashboard						
cal Accounts Password Rule	s Authorizat	ion Authent	tication I	Trewall	Services							
ecurity :: Local Accounts												0
Save Cancel												
Username:	joe											
Password:												
Confirm password:												
Hash Format Password												
Account Expiration Date (YYYY-MM- DD):												
Require password change at login tir	ie .											
User Group admin			user									
		Add Þ										
		< Remove										
			_									

- 3. Enter User Name.
- 4. Enter **Password** and **Confirm Password**.
- 5. Click Save.

**NOTE**: The exact same users must be configured in RSA SecurID with an assigned token.

#### **Authenticate App**

This applies only to Cloud Authentication Services.



- 1. Download the RSA SecurID Authenticate app.
- 2. Go to RSA SecurID Access and login.
- 3. Follow the steps to register the device.

#### Login Process

On login in Nodegrid, provide the user credentials. If 2-factor authentication is required, the login process prompts for the information as requested by SecurID.





# Firewall tab

When configured by an administrator, the Nodegrid device functions as a Firewall. There are six built-in default chains, three for IPv4 and three for IPv6. These accept packets (Output, Input, and Forward). As needed, additional user chains can be created and deleted. (Default chains cannot be deleted.) Default policy can be set for each chain. Default policy is set to accept packages.

To manage (add, edit, delete) rules click on the chain name. Existing rules are listed. The following settings are available when configuring rules.

Setting	Values	Description		
Target	Accept, Drop, Reject, Log, Return			
Source IP/Mask	IP address and mask			
Reverse match for source IP/mask	TRUE/FALSE			
Destination IP/Mask	IP address and mask			
Reverse match for destination IP/mask	TRUE/FALSE			
Input Interface	Any, Available interfaces	One value can be selected.		
Reverse match for input interface	TRUE/FALSE			
Output Interface	Any, Available interfaces	One value can be selected.		
Reverse match for output interface	TRUE/FALSE			
Enable State Match	New, Established, Related, Invalid	One or multiple values can be selected.		

#### **Firewall Settings**



Setting	Values	Description
Reverse state match	TRUE/FALSE	
Fragments	All packets and fragments, unfragmented packets and 1st packets, 2nd and further packets	One value can be selected.
Reject With	Network Unreachable, Host Unreachable, Port Unreachable, Protocol Unreachable, Network Prohibited, Host Prohibited, Administratively Prohibited, TCP Reset	
Protocol	Numeric, TCP, UDP, ICMP	
Protocol - Numeric - Protocol Number	Protocol Number	
Protocol - TCP - Source Port	Port Number	
Protocol - TCP - Destination Port	Port Number	
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag SYN	Any, Set, Unset	
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag ACK	Any, Set, Unset	
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag FIN	Any, Set, Unset	
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag RST	Any, Set, Unset	
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag URG	Any, Set, Unset	
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag PSH	Any, Set, Unset	
Protocol - TCP - Reverse match for TCP flags	TRUE/FALSE	
Protocol - UDP - Source Port	Port Number	
Protocol - UDP - Destination Port	Port Number	
Protocol - ICMP - ICMP Type	Any, Echo Reply, Destination Unreachable, Network Unreachable, Host Unreachable, Protocol Unreachable, Port Unreachable, Fragmentation Needed, Source Route Failed, Network Unknown, Host Unknown, Network Prohibited, TOS Network Unreachable, TOS Host Unreachable, Communication Prohibited, Host Precedence Violation, Precedence Cutoff, Source	





Setting	Values	Description
	Quench, Redirect, Network Redirect, Host Redirect, TOS Network Redirect, TOS Host Redirect, Echo Request, Router Advertisement Router Solicitation, Time Exceeded, TTL Zero During Transit, TTL Zero During Reassembly, Parameter Problem, Bad IP Header, Required Option Missing, Timestamp Request, Timestamp Reply, Address Mask Request, Address Mask Reply	
Protocol - ICMP - Reverse match for ICMP type	TRUE/FALSE	
Reverse match for protocol	TRUE/FALSE	
Reverse match for source port	TRUE/FALSE	
Reverse match for destination port	TRUE/FALSE	
Log Level	Debug, Info, Notice, Warning, Error, Critical, Alert, Emergency	
Log Prefix	Log Prefix String	
Log TCP Sequence Numbers	TRUE/FALSE	
Log Options from The TCP Packet Header	TRUE/FALSE	
Log Options from The IP Packet Header	TRUE/FALSE	

# NAT tab

The NAT section manages (add, edit, delete) defining rules for the Network Address Translation (NAT) table.

There are eight built-in default chains (four for IPv4 and four for IPv6). These accept Pre-routing, Output, Input, and Post-routing packets. Default chains cannot be deleted.

Rules can be created for each chain by clicking on the chain name. This will list all existing rules belonging to the chain. Rules can be created, deleted, and modified. The following settings exist for rules.

#### **NAT Settings**

Settings	Values	Description
Target	Accept, Drop, Reject, Log, Return	



Settings	Values	Description
Source IP/Mask	IP address and mask	
Reverse Match for Source IP/mask	TRUE/FALSE	
Destination IP/Mask	IP address and mask	
Reverse Match for Destination IP/mask	TRUE/FALSE	
Input Interface	Any, Available interfaces	One value can be selected.
Reverse Match for Input Interface	TRUE/FALSE	
Output Interface	Any, Available interfaces	One value can be selected.
Reverse Match for Output Interface	TRUE/FALSE	
Enable State Match	New, Established, Related, Invalid	One or multiple values can be selected
Reverse State Match	TRUE/FALSE	
Fragments	All packets and fragments, Unfragmented packets and 1st packets, 2nd and further packets	One value can be selected.
Reject With	Network Unreachable, Host Unreachable, Port Unreachable, Protocol Unreachable, Network Prohibited, Host Prohibited, Administratively Prohibited, TCP Reset	
Protocol	Numeric, TCP, UDP, ICMP	
Protocol - Numeric - Protocol Number	Protocol Number	
Protocol - TCP - Source Port	Port Number	
Protocol - TCP - Destination Port	Port Number	
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag SYN	Any, Set, Unset	
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag ACK	Any, Set, Unset	
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag FIN	Any, Set, Unset	
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag RST	Any, Set, Unset	
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag URG	Any, Set, Unset	



Settings	Values	Description
Protocol - TCP - TCP Flag PSH	Any, SetU, nset	
Protocol - TCP - Reverse match for TCP flags	TRUE/FALSE	
Protocol - UDP - Source Port	Port Number	
Protocol - UDP - Destination Port	Port Number	
Protocol - ICMP - ICMP Type	Any, Echo Reply, Destination Unreachable, Network Unreachable, Host Unreachable, Protocol Unreachable, Port Unreachable, Fragmentation Needed, Source Route Failed, Network Unknown, Host Unknown, Network Prohibited, TOS Network Unreachable, TOS Host Unreachable, Communication Prohibited, Host Precedence Violation, Precedence Cutoff, Source Quench, Redirect, Network Redirect, Host Redirect, TOS Network Redirect, TOS Network Redirect, TOS Network Redirect, TOS Host Redirect, Echo Request, Router Advertisement Router Solicitation, Time Exceeded, TTL Zero During Transit, TTL Zero During Reassembly, Parameter Problem, Bad IP Header, Required Option Missing, Timestamp Request, Timestamp Reply, Address Mask Request, Address Mask Reply	
Protocol - ICMP - Reverse match for ICMP type	TRUE/FALSE	
Reverse match for protocol	TRUE/FALSE	
Reverse match for source port	TRUE/FALSE	
Reverse match for destination port	TRUE/FALSE	
Log Level	Debug, Info, Notice, Warning, Error, Critical, Alert, Emergency	
Log Prefix	Log Prefix String	
Log TCP Sequence Numbers	TRUE/FALSE	
Log Options from the TCP Packet Header	TRUE/FALSE	



Settings	Values	Description
Log Options from the IP Packet Header	TRUE/FALSE	

# Services tab

This defines Active Services running on the System, as well as general service settings for ZPE Cloud, managed devices, intrusion prevention, SSH settings to the systems, web service settings and cryptographic protocols for the Web Service.

The system's security level is configured here. For instance, unsecured protocols like Telnet or HTTP can be disabled, or the SSH version can be selected.

### Intrusion Prevention

The following settings can be configured:

- Access Control
- Device Encryption

Access Trackin	<b>رک</b> ng System	Network Manager	d Devices Cluster	ि श Security	Auditing	<u>الات</u> Dashboard	
Local Accounts	Password Rules	Authorization	Authentication	Firewall	NAT	Services	
General Services	Intrusion Prevention	n					
Security Services	indusion Prevention						
Save							
Access Contr	ol						
Rescue Mod	e requires authenticatio	n					
	e requires sourcenticatio						
Password pro	tected boot						
Drive Encryp	tion						
Self encryptin	g drive						
	-						
Attention! Copy	and save your lock pass	word in a secure location if y	ou want to disable driver en	cryption in the fut	ure		
	Lock password:	Random auto-generate	d				
		Generated password	d:				۲
		O User defined					
A power cycle is	required for enabling se	elf encrypting drive					

#### Access Control

1. Go to Security :: Services: Intrusion Prevention.



2. In Access Control menu, select as appropriate:

Authentication checkbox (if selected Rescue Mode is activated)requires authentication (enabled or disabled)

Password protected boot (if selected password is required to reboot the Nodegrid device).

3. Click Save.

#### **Device Encryption**

- 1. Go to Security :: Services: Intrusion Prevention.
- 2. In Drive Encryption menu, select as appropriate:

Self encrypting Drive checkbox (if selected additional options display).

**NOTE**: If enabled, Nodegrid must be restarted for the change to take effect.

3. *Lock Password* menu:

**NOTE**: Please store the password in a secure location as it cannot be recovered if lost.

Random auto-generated (if selected, creates a random password)

**User defined** (if selected, enter the password).

4. Click Save.

## **ZPE Cloud**

ZPE Cloud is a cloud-based management platform for Nodegrid products. No need to ship preconfigured devices to the physical server location. ZPE Cloud ensures all deployment activity is done at the device location. This includes initial deployment, configuration, and ongoing management. The customer is assured of 360 visibility of the entire deployment along with rich analytics.

ZPE Cloud allows device configuration at the server branch. Deploy consistent, automated provisioning via the ZPE Cloud from the NOC.

ZPE Cloud brings together all Nodegrid products on a cloud platform. Use "Reset" button available on all Nodegrid products to reconnect back your Nodegrid to the ZPE Cloud.

Use the Nodegrid device's *ZPE Cloud* section to configure cloud services.

#### **ZPE Cloud Settings**

Setting	Value	Description
Enable ZPE Cloud	TRUE/FALSE	For the Nodegrid SR family (NSR, GSR, BSR & LSR) (default: enabled). For the Nodegrid Serial Console (default: disabled).
Enable File Protection	TRUE/FALSE	If enabled, any file transfer requires an authentication hash based on this password (validates the integrity and origin of the file) (default: disabled).
Enable File Encryption	TRUE/FALSE	If enabled, owner must encrypt the zipped file with a password (defined under file protection) (default: disabled).



## Enable ZPE Cloud (Nodegrid Serial Console)

#### WebUI Procedure

1. Go to Security :: Services,

ZPE Cloud	
🗹 Enable ZPE Cloud	
ZPE Cloud URL:	https://zpecloud.com
Enable Remote Access	

2. Select Enable ZPE Cloud checkbox.

#### Enter ZPE Cloud URL.

- 3. Select Enable Remote Access checkbox.
- 4. Click Save,

#### **Complete the enrollment process**

#### **CLI Procedure**

- 1. On the Access table, click **Console**.
- 2. On the CLI, enter:

shell sudo su -

zpe\_cloud\_enroll

- 3. Enter Customer Code.
- 4. Enter Enrollment Key.

**NOTE**: To locate Customer Code and Enrollment Key, log into ZPE Cloud account and go to *Settings :: Enrollment*. (The **Enable Device Enrollment** checkbox must be enabled.)

5. A confirmation is sent when the enrollment succeeds.

The script can be called three different ways.

Example 1 – select options from menu.

```
root@ZPECloudNSR2:~# zpe_cloud_enroll -h
Usage: zpe_cloud_enroll [options]
ZPE Cloud Enrollment
Options:
    -v, --version Displays version information.
    -h, --help Displays this help.
```



j)(t zpe

```
-c <customer-code> ZPE Cloud customer code to enroll device.
-k <enrollment-key> ZPE Cloud customer enrollment key.
-r Read customer enrollment key from barcode.
```

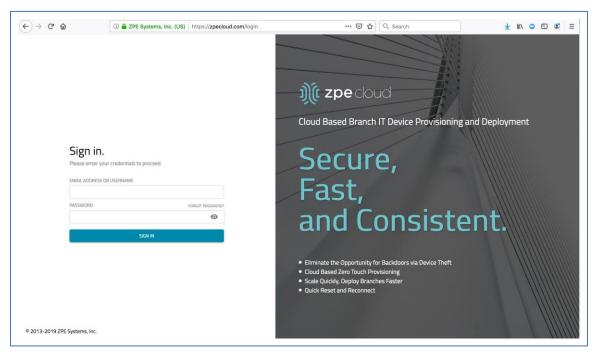
Example 2 – no arguments included. If no arguments are provided, the device will request that the customer code and the enrollment key to be entered.

```
root@ZPECloudNSR2:~# zpe_cloud_enroll
Enter your customer code: 2
Customer Code: "2"
Enter your enrollment key: example_key
```

Example 3 – with arguments (Customer Code and Enrollment Key) For this case, customer code (-c) and enrollment key (-k) are provided as the script arguments.

zpe\_cloud\_enroll -c 2 -k example\_key

Once the ZPE Cloud is enabled on the device, access <u>www.zpecloud.com</u> to manage all enrolled devices. Access requires a company registration and an admin user account.



## **Active Services**

This controls which Services are enabled in the System, and which network ports are used.



#### **Active Services Settings**

Setting	Value	Description
Enable detection of USB devices	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)
Enable RPC	TRUE/FALSE	Required for NFS share access.
Enable gRPC	TRUE/FALSE	Support for gRPC protocol (default: disabled).
Enable FTP Service	TRUE/FALSE	
Enable SNMP Service	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)
Enable Telnet Service to Nodegrid	TRUE/FALSE	
Telnet TCP Port	Port number	(default: 23)
Enable Telnet Service to Managed Devices	TRUE/FALSE	
Enable ICMP echo reply	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)
Enable USB over IP	TRUE/FALSE	
Enable Virtualization Services	TRUE/FALSE	To run NFV's or Docker apps, needs to be enabled. (Both features require licenses.)
Cluster TCP Port	Port Number	(default: 9966)
Enable Automatic Cluster Enrollment	TRUE/FALSE	
Search Engine TCP Port	Port Number	(default: 9300)
Enable Search Engine High Level Cipher Suite	TRUE/FALSE	
Enable VM Serial access	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)t
VM Serial Port	Port Number	(default: 9977)
vMotion timeout [seconds]	Number in seconds	(default: 300)
Enable Zero Touch Provisioning	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)
Enable PXE (Preboot eXecution Environment)	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)

# Managed Devices Configuration

This configures general aspects and services that control managed devices.



#### **Managed Devices Settings**

Setting	Value	Description
Device access enforced via user group authorization	TRUE/FALSE	If enabled, users can only access devices listed under the authorization groups for the user. If not enabled, all enrolled devices are available to the user without restriction.
Enable Autodiscovery	TRUE/FALSE	Allows Auto Discovery of managed devices on the network.
DHCP lease controlled by autodiscovery rules	TRUE/FALSE	If enabled, the DHCP lease is controlled by Auto Discovery rules for auto-discovered devices (Enable AutoDiscovery must be enabled.)

## Intrusion Prevention Configuration

This allows configuration of mechanisms which can prevent unauthorized access to the System (i.e., Fail 2 Ban and Rescue Mode).

Setting	Value	Description
Block host with multiple authentications fails	TRUE/FALSE	
Period Host will stay blocked (min)	Number in min	Number of minutes the system is not reachable on the network (default: 10).
Timeframe to monitor authentication fails (min)	Number in min	Number of minutes that failed authentication attempts are counted, and before the counter gets reset (default: 10).
Number of authentication fails to block host	Number	Number of failed authentication attempts before host is blocked (default: 5).
Rescue Mode requires authentication	TRUE/FALSE	If enabled, Rescue Mode require authentication through a local user account (i.e., root).
Password protected boot	TRUE/FALSE	If enabled, editing BIOS and Grub require password authentication.

#### **Intrusion Prevention Settings**

**NOTE** : Password Protected Boot is a patent-pending feature that allows the Nodegrid OS to communicate with BIOS with a password. This is designed to prevent unauthorized changes. The same password also protects Grub from unauthorized changes. This requires minimum BIOS version of 81122T00.

## SSH Settings

SSH service is configured here to control access to the Nodegrid device. Only SSHv2 is supported.



#### **SSH Settings**

Setting	Value	Description
SSH allow root access	TRUE/FALSE	Root access through SSH (default: enabled).
SSH TCP Port	Port Number	(default: 22)
SSH Ciphers	Allowed list of ciphers	Allowed ciphers supported by Nodegrid (default: blank).
SSH MACs	Allowed list of MAC addresses	Allowed MAC address that can access the Nodegrid device via SSH (default: blank).
SSH KexAlgorithms	Allowed list of key exchange algorithms	(default: blank)

# Web Service Settings

The web server is configured here.

### Web Service Settings

Setting	Value	Description
Enable HTTP access	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)
HTTP Port	Port Number	(default: 80)
Enable HTTPS access	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)
HTTPS Port	Port Number	(default: 443)
Redirect HTTP to HTTPS	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)

# Cryptographic Protocols Settings

This configures supported ciphers to access the web server.

#### **Cryptographic Protocol Settings**

Setting	Value	Description
TLSv1.3	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)
TLSv1.2	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)
TLSv1.1	TRUE/FALSE	(default: enabled)
TLSv1	TRUE/FALSE	(default: disabled)



Setting	Value	Description
Cipher Suite Level	High, Medium, Low, Custom	(default: Medium)

# **Auditing Section**

This tracks events and data logging settings. Events can be distributed with four different methods: Email, File, SNMP Trap, and Syslog. Data logging and events logging can be stored locally, remotely (via NFS) or sent to a syslog server.

# **Event tab**

## Categories sub-tab

To review categories of events, go to *Auditing :: Events :: Categories* . These are the categories enabled for each service.

uditing :: Events :: C						😂 Reloa
Events	System Events	AAA Events	Device Events	Logging Events	ZPE Cloud Events	
ZPE Cloud						
Email						
File	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
SNMP Trap						
Syslog	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	

#### Edit Category for an Event Type

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Auditing :: Events :: Categories.
- 2. Click the Event name.
- 3. Select checkboxes for event categories.
- 4. Click Save.

# **Settings tab**

Data logging captures the data stream on the device, as well as to and from target devices. General settings are available under Auditing :: Settings.

#### **Data Logging Settings**

Setting	Values	Description
Enable File Destination	TRUE/FALSE	If enabled, all Data Logs are stored at the defined File location (defined under Auditing Destinations) (default: enabled).





Setting	Values	Description
Enable Syslog Destination	TRUE/FALSEE	If enabled, all Data Logs are sent to the defined Syslog location (defined under Auditing Destinations (default: disabled).
Add Timestamp on every line logged	TRUE/FALSEE	If enabled, a timestamp is added to each data log line.
Timestamp Format	UTC, Local Time	Timestamp or time zone (default: UTC).

# **Events tab**

Events are automatically created based on event and device settings. By default, all events are stored to the local file system. This behavior is adjusted under *Auditing :: Events*. The administrator can configure to which destination events and which event categories are logged.

Four event categories can be individually controlled:

- Systems Events
- AAA Events
- Device Events
- Logging Events

Go to *Tracking :: Event List* for all listed events and associated categories. Each event category can be configured to send the events to any of the fourevent destinations or to none.

Event Destinations are:

- File This can be local File storage or NFS file storage
- Syslog This can be local Syslog or remote
- SNMP Trap
- Email

#### **Destinations**

#### File

By default, data logs are written to local files. The file destination and archive settings can be set under *Auditing :: Destinations :: File*.

**NOTE**: NFS requires RPC service to be enabled (go to Security :: Services).

## File Destination and Archive Settings

Setting	Values	Description
Destination	localNFS	



Setting	Values	Description
NFS - NFS Server	IP address of NFS Server	
NFS - NFS Path	Path to the NFS root directory	Each device should have its own root directory.
File Size [Kbytes]	File size in Kbytes	File size at which the file is rotated. Valid values are between 0 (disabled) and 2048 Kb (default: 1024).
Number of Archives	Number	Number of archive files kept before discarded (default: 0) (maximum: 99).
(NFS) Archive by Time [HH:MM]	Time in format HH:MM	Time when the file archive is rotated (default: blank).

# Syslog

Support destinations are: local Syslog destination or remote IPv4 and IPv6 destination.

#### **Syslog Options**

Setting	Value	Description
System Console	TRUE/FALSE	Syslog events displayed on device console port sessions (default: enabled).
Admin Session	TRUE/FALSE	Syslog events displayed on any open admin session on the device (default: disabled).
IPv4 Remote Server	IP address	One or more IP addresses (comma-separated).
IPv4 Address or Hostname	TRUE/FALS	(default: disabled)
IPv6 Remote Server	IP address	One or more IP addresses (comma-separated).
IPv6 Address or Hostname	TRUE/FALSE	(default: disabled)
Event Facility	Log Local 0, Log Local 1, Log Local 2, Log Local 3, Log Local 4, Log Local 5	Syslog logging facility for Events.
Data Logging Facility	Log Local 0, Log Local 1, Log Local 2, Log Local 3, Log Local 4, Log Local 5	Syslog logging facility for data logs.



### **SNMP** Trap

Any triggered event can be sent as an SNMP trap to an existing NMS system. SNMP v2 and 3 for traps is supported. The MIB files for the device are available together with the firmware files.

The MIB files are located as follows:

root@nodegrid:~# ls -l /usr/local/mibs/ total 104 -rw-r--r-- 1 root root 36940 Nov 20 2017 NodeGrid-MIB.asn -rw-r--r-- 1 root root 61403 Nov 20 2017 NodeGrid-TRAP-MIB.asn -rw-r--r-- 1 root root 2732 Nov 20 2017 ZPESystems.smi

NOTE: SNMP3 INFORM messages are currently not supported.

#### SNMP Trap Settings

Setting	Value	Description
SNMP Engine ID	none	Displays the systems Engine ID
Server	IPv4 or IPv6 IP address	
Transport Protocol	UDP-IPv4, TCP-IPv4, UDP- IPv6, TCP-IPv6	Protocol to send traps (default: UDP-IPv4).
Port	TCP port	(default: 161)
Trap Version	Version 2c, Version 3	SNMP version to be used.
Version 2c - Community	Community name	
Version 3 - User Name	User name	
Version 3 -Security Level	noAuth, NoPrivauth, NoPrivauthPriv	
Version 3 -Authentication Algorithm	MD5, SHA	
Version 3 -Authentication Password	Password	
Version 3 -Privacy Algorithm	DES, AES	
Version 3 - Privacy Passphrase	Pass phrase	

#### **Email Notification**

Events can be sent to an email address.

# ))(t zpe

iditing :: Destinations :: Email		
Save Test Email		
Server:		۵.
Port:	25	
Username:		
Password:	•••••	P
Confirm Password:	•••••	P
Destination Email:		
Sender:		
Start TLS		

#### **Email Notification Settings**

Setting	Value	Description
Server	SMTP server address	
Port	TCP port to be used	(default: 25)
Username	Username	
Password	Password	
Confirm Password	Password	
Destination Email	Email address	Target email address for events.
Start TLS	TRUE/FALSE	If TLS is used for the communication.

# **Monitoring Section**

This monitors and collects sensor data from Managed Devices, connected to a Nodegrid sensor or that support SNMP or IPMI protocol.

The collected data are defined and controlled through Monitoring Templates which will be assigned to a monitored device during its configuration.



# **Monitoring Templates**

Several preexisting monitoring templates are available. These typically fulfill user requirements. As needed, these templates can be customized. All templates are text files, located in sub directories at /etc/collectd.templates according to the protocol used to collect monitoring data (SNMP or IPMI).

/etc/collectd.templates/snmp

/etc/collectd.templates/ipmi

Any new file added to these directories automatically appear in the user interface.

## SNMP Template

#### Create a new SNMP Template

#### CLI Procedure

- 1. Login to the Shell as root.
- 2. Create a copy of one existing template as a starting point for the new template.
- 3. Each SNMP template file has two types of subsections:

Data (one entry per data point, each identified by a unique ID.)

Host (one single entry, defined SNMP parameters, collecting interval, and data points to be collected.)

- 4. The template file should only include data points of general common use. All other data points can be removed from the file.
- 5. Use commit to save the template.

#### Settings and Values for Data Entry

Setting	Value	Description
Data	Internal name of the data point as it is collected. Should be unique.	Cannot have spaces. Example: "pdu_in_cur", "pdu_in_vol".
Туре	Temperature, fan speed, humidity, counter, percent time left, voltage, current power, apparent_power, power_factor, frequency	Data type
Table	True/False	reflects if the OID is part of a table or not
Instance	True/False	If Table= true (SNMP OID prefix retrieves a list of names associated with the corresponding values). For example, in a PDU this could be the outlet name. If Table = false (name of the instance is associated with the value)
InstancePrefi x	String	(optional) String to prepend to the Instance, enclosed in double quotes.



Setting	Value	Description
Values	True/False	If Table = true (SNMP OID prefix retrieves a list of values). If Table = false (SNMP OID retrieves a single value).
Scale	Decimal value	(optional) Decimal value to be multiplied to the value retrieved before persisting it.

Example:

```
<Data "pdu_in_cur">

Type "current"

Table true

Instance ".1.3.6.1.4.1.476.1.42.3.8.40.20.1.20"

Values ".1.3.6.1.4.1.476.1.42.3.8.40.20.1.130"

Scale 0.01

</Data>
```

The host entry in an SNMP template only requires an adjustment in the Collect setting. The values list should contain a list of all data entries to be collected. All listed data entries require a corresponding data entry definition.

## **IPMI Discovery Template**

The discover template for IPMI automatically discovers all available sensors on an IPMI device. The template has one subsection.

Setting	Value	Description
AuthType	None, md2, md5, straight	Authentication type for the IPMI protocol (default: negotiate the strongest one).
Privilege	Callback, user, operator, admin	Privilege level for IPMI protocol (default: admin).
Sensor	Name of the Sensor to be collected	Selects sensors to collect or ignore, depending on "Ignore, Selected" setting. Can be defined multiple times, each for one selected sensor.
IgnoreSelected	True/False	If true, does not collect for the sensors selected by Sensor. If false, only collects for the sensors selected by Sensor.
Scale	""	(optional) A decimal value to be multiplied to the value retrieved before persisting it.

#### **IPMI** Options

#### **Enable Monitoring**

Monitoring is enabled on a per-device basis. The settings are part of the Managed Device settings.

#### WebUI Procedure

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.

# ))(t zpe

- 1. In the Managed Device section, access the device.
- 2. On the device, go to Management.
- 3. Enable and configure the required monitoring protocol like SNMP or IPMI
- 4. Enable Monitoring and assign the template and assign the collection interval.
- 5. Click Save.

# **Supported Nodegrid Devices**

## **USB Sensors**

Nodegrid USB Temperature and Humidity Sensors are automatically discovered by the System (usb\_sensor). After detection, it must be enabled to use with monitoring and alarm management.

## KVM Dongle

With the KVM USB dongle, a KVM session can be established to a legacy server (VGA and USB connection). The System automatically detects the dongle when it is connected. The device must be enabled.

### Bluetooth

Bluetooth devices are supported. These are primarily used for monitoring and IoT applications. The Bluetooth functionality is provided through the Nodegrid WiFi module which is available for the Nodegrid Service Router family.

By default, the Bluetooth functionality is disabled. It must be manually enabled before use.

An admin user can enable the service via the shell with these commands:

```
[admin@nodegrid /]# shell sudo su -
root@nodegrid:~#sed -i s/^BLUETOOTH_ENABLED=0/BLUETOOTH_ENABLED=1/g
/etc/default/Bluetooth
root@nodegrid:~#sed -i s/^#AutoEnable=true/AutoEnable=true/g /etc/bluetooth/main.conf
root@nodegrid:~#sed -i s/^#InitiallyPowered=true/InitiallyPowered=true/g
/etc/bluetooth/main.conf
root@nodegrid:~# /etc/init.d/bluetooth start
root@nodegrid:~# bluetoothctl
root@nodegrid:~# [bluetooth]# scan on
```

After that, Bluetooth devices can be paired to the Nodegrid, then configured for monitoring or an IoT application.

To pair to a device, use the bluetoothctl command:

```
root@nodegrid:~#bluetoothctl bluetoothctl
[bluetooth]# devices
Device 00:16:94:1A:EA:2C Sensor
```





```
[bluetooth]# pair 00:16:94:1A:EA:2C
Attempting to pair with 00:16:94:1A:EA:2C
Pairing successful
[bluetooth]# connect 00:16:94:1A:EA:2C
Attempting to connect to 00:16:94:1A:EA:2C
Connection successful
[bluetooth]# quit
```

# **VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol)**

The Nodegrid Platform supports embedded Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP). This allows Nodegrid to become part of a virtual router interface (provides router redundancy). This is used to provide automatic failover support for default gateways. By default, VRRP is not configured. To enable support, the service must first be configured by an administrator using the shell.

**NOTE**: VRRP can only be used with network interfaces directly exposed to the Nodegrid OS. Individual switch ports on a Nodegrid Service Router card cannot be used.

VRRP support is implemented through *keepalived* services. Official documentation for the service is available on the <u>Keep Alived web site</u>.

The service configuration files are located in /etc/keepalived/. At a minimum, the keepalived.conf must be a valid configuration. The service is started with this command.

/etc/init.d/keepalived start

To automatically start keepalived on the next system start, run this command:

update-rc.d -s keepalived defaults 90

# **Dashboard Section**

The Dashboard allows visual presentations of Event Details, Managed Device details, and monitoring data from the device and the Managed Devices. Several dashboards can be created for different purposes. For example, one to monitor managed devices data points such as Power Consumption, Voltage (V), Current (A), Temperature, Fan speed, and many more. There are options to show data from different periods of times (i.e., last 15 minutes, last hour, last day, this week, this month, last five years).

NOTE: The Dashboard feature is only available through the WebUI



# **Data Point Exploration**

This provides an example on how to verify collected data are stored, and details on the collected data.

#### **Collect Raw Data Points**

- 1. Go to Dashboard :: Discover.
- 2. Select Index Pattern:

logstash-\* (contains monitored data)

- \*\_date\_\* (contains event notifications)
- 3. Adjust the time frame as needed

By default, all displayed data is collected within the defined time frame.

- 4. Use the Search field to search for a specific device or data point.
- 5. Verify that data points were collected, and inspect the available fields.

**NOTE**: Collected data is buffered before stored. A couple collection cycles can occur before the data is visualized.

#### **Configuration Expressions of Data Points**

#### Data Point fields (logstash-\* Index )

Field	Value	Description
host	Device Name	Name of the device being monitored.
plugin	snmp, ipmi, nominal, aggregation	Name of the collection plugin.
plugin_instance	sum, average	Instance of the plugin collecting the data, if the plugin requires it. Present in the aggregation plugin.
collectd_type	temperature, fan speed, humidity, counter, percent time left, voltage, current power, apparent_power, power_factor, frequency	Type of measurement.
type_instance	Data Point Name	Name of the element associated with measurement.

#### Device fields (logstash-\* Index )

Field	Values	Description
name	Device Name	The name of the device being monitored.
mode	enabled, on demand, disabled	operational mode of the device.
type	device type	Device type as assigned under Managed Devices.

# ))(t zpe

Field	Values	Description
family	ilo, drac, ipmi_1.5, ilmi_2.0, cimc_ucs, device_console, pdu	Device family.
addr_location	Address	
coordinates	Coordinates	
ip	IP address	
mac	MAC address	The MAC address of the device, if known.
alias	IP address alias	
groups	list of groups	Authorization groups granted access to the device.
licensed	yes, no	Device license state.
status	connected, disconnected, in-use, unknown	Current status of the device.
nodegrid	Nodegrid hostname	Hostname of the Nodegrid that controls the device.
custom fields		Any custom field configured for the device.

#### Event fields (\*\_date\_\* Index )

Field	Value	Description
event_id	Number	Event ID number.
event_msg	Text	Event Message.
host	Nodegrid hostname	Hostname of the Nodegrid where Event occurred.
message	Text	Full message text.

# **Create a Visualization**

Visualizations display aggregate data in a variety of options. Following are descriptions of data presentation.

# Line Charts

Line Charts allow the visualization of data points along the line graph.

#### **Create a Single or Multi-Line Chart**

#### WebUI Procedure



#### 1. Click Visualize

Dashboard	I		
Discover	Visualize	Dashboard	Settings

2. On the Create a new visualization dialog, select a Line Chart.

Dashboard				🕫 Re
Discover	Visualize	Dashboard Setting	1	
	Cre	ate a new	visualization Step 1	
		Area chart	Great for stacked timelines in which the total of all series is more important than comparing any two or more series. Less useful for assessing the relative change of unrelated data points as changes in a series lower down the stack will have a difficult to gauge effect on the series above it.	
	▦	Data table	The data table provides a detailed breakdown, in tabular format, of the results of a composed aggregation. Tip, a data table is available from many other charts by clicking grey bar at the bottom of the chart.	
	~	Line chart	Often the best chart for high density time series. Great for comparing one series to another. Be careful with sparse sets as the connection between points can be misleading.	
		Markdown widget	Useful for displaying explanations or instructions for dashboards.	
	I	Metric	One big number for all of your one big number needs. Perfect for showing a count of hits, or the exact average a numeric field.	
	¢	Pie chart	Pie charts are ideal for displaying the parts of some whole. For example, sales percentages by department.Pro Tip: Pie charts are best used sparingly, and with no more than 7 slices per pie.	
	•	Tile map	Your source for geographic maps. Requires an elasticsearch geo_point field. More specifically, a field that is mapped as type:geo_point with latitude and longitude coordinates.	
	htt	Vertical bar chart	The goto chart for oh-so-many needs. Great for time and non-time data. Stacked or grouped, exact numbers or percentages. If you are not sure which chart your need, you could do worse than to start here.	

3. On the Select a search source menu, From a new search drop-down, select logstash-\* as the index pattern

Select a search source		
From a new search		
Select an index pattern		
b22f0e48-abbf-42ad-9e2c-5736fc5e46c7_date_* logstash=		

4. To select the data points to visualize, enter a search expression, i.e., <device name>.



5. As needed, the search expression can be extended to be more selective.





6. Click on the Y-Axis metrics Arrow to expand it.

metrics
Y-Axis

7. On the dialog, select Average for Aggregation and enter a Field value.

Y-Axis Aggregation	
Average	•
Field	
value	•

8. Click on X-Axis.

b	buckets		
	Select buckets type		
	X-Axis		

9. For Aggregation, select Date Histogram. Accept Field and Interval defaults.

For a single line graph visualization, click **Save** and enter a **Title**.

buckets	
X-Axis Aggregation	×
Date Histogram	•
Field	
@timestamp	•
Interval	
Auto	•

For a multi-line graph visualization, continue with the next steps.

10. To add multiple data points, click Add sub-buckets.

P Add sub-buckets	
-------------------	--

11. Click on **Split Lines**.



Select buckets type		
Split Lines		
Split Chart		

#### 12. On Sub Aggregation drop-down, select Filters.

Split Lines Sub Aggregation	<b>▲</b> ▼ <mark>X</mark>
Filters	•
Filter 1	<b>*</b>
*	

13. In Filter 1, enter a search expression for the elements to visualize.

• ×	Filter 1
	type_instance:"bank_0"
	type_instance: pank_0

14. (optional) To associate a label, click the Settings icon

Filter 1	💿 ×
type_instance:"bank_0"	

15. In Filter 1 label field, enter the label.

Filter 1 - Total	÷ ×
type_instance:"bank_0"	
Filter 1 label	
Total	

16. To add another element, click Add Filter.

Add Filter

17. Repeat the add filter for all additional elements.

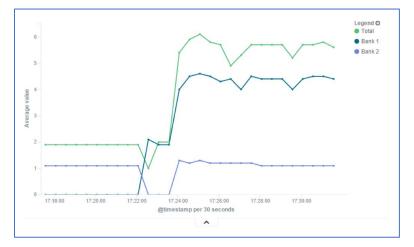


Filter 1 - Total	<b>* ×</b>
type_instance:"bank_0"	
Filter 1 label	
Total	
Filter 2 - Bank 1	<b>* ×</b>
type_instance:"bank_1"	
Filter 2 label	
Bank 1	
Filter 3 - Bank 2	* ×
type_instance:"bank_2"	
Filter 3 label	
Bank 2	

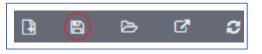
18. To refresh the graph based on the configuration, click on the green arrow.



The graph presents the configuration details. As needed tweak the entries.



19. Click Save.



20. Enter Title for the visualization and click Save.

Title
Facilities_APC_04 Current (A)
Save



## Area Charts

The area chart is useful for stacking measurements for different although related entities, such as the outlets of a PDU.

NOTE: Become familiar with the Line Chart procedure before creating an Area Chart,

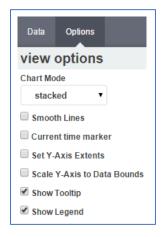
1. Click Visualize.

Dashboard	ł		
Discover	Visualize	Dashboard	Settings

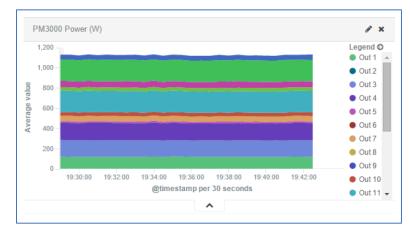
#### 2. Select Area chart

	Area chart	
Less ı	t for stacked timelines in which the total of all series is more important than comparing any two or useful for assessing the relative change of unrelated data points as changes in a series lower dow a difficult to gauge effect on the series above it.	

3. In Options tab, Chart Mode drop-down, select stacked.



#### This is the appearance of such a visualization





**NOTE**: Search expressions are used to select/limit data points on the visualization. They can be used as a filter for the whole visualization, as sub-aggregation filters, or as a filter for the whole dashboard.

Search expressions are not restricted to data point fields. An expression can also refer to fields associated with the device (type, IP address, groups, custom fields, and more). For example, to collect current from each outlet in a selection of Rack PDUs, use one custom field "rack:abc" with another custom field "rack:xyz".

Search:	rack:abc OR rack:xyz	$\otimes$ $\otimes$	
2 results			
Facilities	MPH 01		
		known, Type: pdu_mph2, Mode: On-demand, Licensed: Yes	s, IP Address:
	. 116, MAC Address:		
	dmin, rack: xyz,	0,443, NodeGrid Host: nodegrid.zpesystems.com. zpesyste	ms.com, IP Alias: ,
	VEB Tunnel Info		
concore r			
Facilities	PM3000_03		
Name: Fa 192.168.2		Unknown, Type: pdu_pm3000, Mode: On-demand, License	d: Yes, IP Address:
	ress: 00:E0:86:1C:B7:99, 1 ms.com, IP Alias: , Groups	unneled Ports: 80,443, NodeGrid Host: nodegrid.zpesystems admin.rack: abc.	.com.
Concela M	VEB Tunnel Info		

- 4. The following steps show the total sum of the current provided by outlets of each Rack PDU.
- 5. On metrics, Y-axis, set the Aggregation drop-down, select Sum.

metrics		
Y-Axis Aggregation		
Sum		•

6. On **Buckets**, set the **Interval** to match the collecting period.

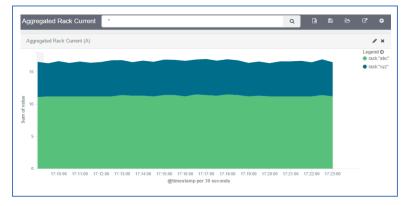
buckets	
X-Axis Aggregation	× ¥ X
Date Histogram	۲
Field	
@timestamp	•
Interval	
Custom	•
30s	

7. On Buckets, set Sub-Aggregation filters to custom fields.

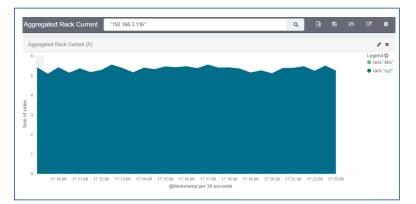


b	uckets
	X-Axis @timestamp per 30 seconds 🔺 🔻 🗙
	Split Area Sub Aggregation
	Filters
	Filter 1 🔷 🗙
	rack:"abc"
	Filter 2
	rack:"xyz"

8. The resulting visualization would look like this:

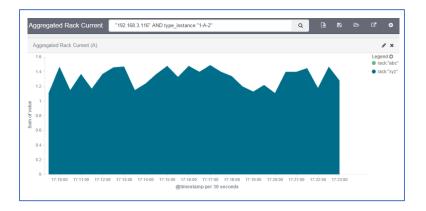


9. Add Filters to display the values of only one Rack PDU with the IP address.



10. Additional filters can be used as needed, all from the same visualization.





- 11. Click Save.
- 12. Enter Title for the visualization and click Save.

**NOTE**: When using area charts be careful to not account for the same measurement twice, by mixing power consumers and power producers, or a Rack PDU's input and output power.

# **Create a Dashboard**

Dashboards are a collection of one or more visualizations. These objects can be created, modified, and deleted..

#### **Create a New Dashboard**

#### WebUI Procedure

1. Click Dashboard.



2. Click the New Dashboard icon.



3. Click Add Visualization icon.



This will show the previously saved visualizations.

- 4. Click the visualization to be added to the Dashboard.
- 5. Add other visualizations, as needed.



Visualizations	Searches
Visualization	Filter
Z Facilities	APC_04 Current (A)
Z Facilities	APC_04 Power (W)
🛃 User Activ	ity

6. On the panel, resize and reposition the graphs.

•		Q B 🖻	6 C
Facilities_APC_04 Power (W)	≠ ×	Facilities_APC_04 Current (A)	<b>)</b>
1,200	Legend O	6 5 4 3 2 1	Legend C Total Bank 1 Bank 2
0 17:36:00 17:38:00 17:40:00 17:42:00 17:44:00 17:46:00 17:48:00 @timestamp.per 30 seconds		0 17:36:00 17:38:00 17:40:00 17:42:00 17:44:00 17:46:00 17:48:00 @timestamp per 30 seconds	
^		<b>^</b>	

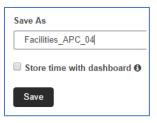
7. If applicable, filters can be added to the Dashboard.

Discover Visualiz	e Dashboard	Settings
Facilities_APC_0	04 type_insta	nce:bank_0 OR type_instance:total_pow

8. Click Save icon.



9. On Save As, enter the Dashboard Name, then click Save.



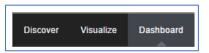
## Inspect a Dashboard

### View a Dashboard

#### WebUI Procedure



1. Click Dashboard.



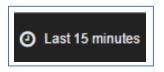
- 2. Click the Folder icon.
- 3. Click the Dashboard name. As needed, in **Dashboard Filter**, enter a search expression.



4. View the displayed Dashboard.



5. To adjust the time frame, click the Clock icon.



6. Select a new time frame.

Quick	Today	Yesterday	Last 15 minutes	Last 30 days
	This week	Day before yesterday	Last 30 minutes	Last 60 days
Relative	This month	This day last week	Last 1 hour	Last 90 days
Control	This year	Previous week	Last 4 hours	Last 6 month
Absolute	The day so far	Previous month	Last 12 hours	Last 1 year
Absolute	Week to date	Previous year	Last 24 hours	Last 2 years
	Month to date		Last 7 days	Last 5 years
	Year to date			

7. To automatically refresh the Dashboard, click the **Auto-refresh** icon and select the refresh frequency.



# ))(t zpe

# **Applications Section**

Nodegrid devices can run additional applications. These mostly expand software capabilities. The most used apps are in the areas of monitoring and SD-WAN. While all Nodegrid units support this feature, the Services Router Family is specifically designed to run applications to provide a wide variety of connectivity options.

NOTE: To run applications, additional licenses are required.

# **Docker Applications**

Docker is an open platform to build, ship and run distributed applications. Admnistrators can run Docker apps on Nodegrid. Docker applications can be pulled from **Docker Hub**, starting and stopping of the Docker Containers.

**NOTE**: To activate virtualization, go to *Security :: Services* and select **Enable Virtualization Services**. This is necessary to run NFV's or Docker apps. Both features require licenses (System :: License).

	<b>X</b> Tracking	<b>O</b> System	Network	Managed		Cluster	Security	Auditing	<u>내</u> 일 Dashboard
Local Accoun	nts F	Password Rules	Autho	rization	Authenticat	ion	Firewall	Services	
Security :: Ser	rvices						_ /		
Save									
Active S	ervices								
🗹 Enable	e detection of	USB devices							
🗌 Enable	e RPC								
🗌 Enable	e FTP Service								
🗹 Enable	e SNMP Servic	e							
🗌 Enable	e Telnet Servic	e to NodeGrid							
🗌 Enable	e Telnet Servic	e to Managed De	vices						
🗹 Enable	e ICMP echo re	eply	/						
Enable	e USB over IP								
Enable	e Virtualizatio	n Services							
	Clou	d TCP Port:	9966						

To view licensed applications, go to System :: Licenses.

Access	& Tracking	<b>O</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	s Cluster	F Security	Auditing	روايي Dashboard	Applications	
License	Preference	es D	ate and Time	Toolkit	Logging	Custom Fields	Dial Up	Schedule	ir,	
System ::	: License									C Re
Add	Delete						1		nsed   Used   Avail nsed   Used   Avail	
S	erial Number	License K	еу	Application	Number of Lie	censes Type	F	Peer Address	Expiration Date	Deta
0	000002049	XXXXX-XXXXX	-xxxxx-H4KWG	Docker Containers	500	Local	y Installed L	.ocal	2019-05-19	

**NOTE**: The management of Docker Applications is currently only available through the WebUI. The WebUI provides a basic interface to manage Docker Containers. For more advanced features, administrators can use the docker command line tools.

## **Docker Images**

To download (and delete Docker container images, go to *Applications :: Images*. To access **Docker Hub**, Nodegrid requires direct network access.

#### **Download New Images**

- 1. Go to Applications :: Images.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Provide the image to download (for specific versions, use the : separator.

L Access	X Tracking	<b>O</b> System	Network	Managed Devices	Cluster	ि Security	Auditing	<u>⊪il≌</u> Dashboard	Applications
Links	Containers	Image	5						
Applicatio	ns :: Images								
Save	Cancel								
		Image name:	hello-world:	latest					

4. Click on **Save**. This downloads the image.



Links Conta	iners Images							
Applications :: Image	Applications :: Images CReload							
Add Delete								
DID			Name	Status				
sha256:fce289	sha256:fce289e99eb9bca977dae136fbe2a82b6b7d4c372474c9235adc1741675f587e         hello-world:latest         Co							

## **Docker Containers**

Administrators can add a container based on an existing image. Go to *Applications :: Containers*. The container can be started, stopped, and deleted, as needed.

For additional detail see the official Docker create documentation.

**NOTE**: When a container is created, is not automatically started.

#### Add a Container

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Applications :: Containers.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Provide the following information:
  - **Image name** (name of a Docker Image)

List of valid image names can be found under Applications :: Images

(optional) Command (Command to run within the container)

**Hostname** (Hostname assigned to the container)

Domain (Domain name assigned to the container)

**Container Name** (Name of the Docker container)

**CPUs** (number of CPU's assigned to the container)

Memory(MB) (Amount of RAM assigned to the container)

(optional) **Arguments** (Options to be used on the container)

4. Click Save.

### **Application Links**

Administrators can create simple web links to run containers and other applications.

#### **Create Application Link**

#### WebUI Procedure

- 1. Go to Applications :: Links.
- 2. Click Add.

©2022 ZPE Systems, Inc.



- 3. Enter a **Name** for the link.
- 4. In **URL**, provide a valid URL.
- 5. Click **Select Icon** to choose an icon associated with the link.

Links	Containers	Images		
Application	is :: Links			C Reload
Save	ancel			
		Name:	Hello_World	
		URL:	http://127.0.0.1	
		lcon	Select loon 💧	

- 6. Click Save.
- 7. When the link is created, click to test.

		Images
Applicatior	s :: Links	
Add		
_		×
	<b>6</b>	
	Hello_World	

**NOTE**: Depending on the Application, there can be an advantage to create a target device for the created Application.

# **Network Function Virtualization**

Administrators can run additional NFV's or other Virtual Machines. A large variety of configuration options is available through the command line interface.

Contact Technical Support for more information.

# **Appendix A – General Information**

## **Technical Support**

Our Technical Support staff provides assistance in any operational or installation issues for the Nodegrid products. For any question first follow this procedure:

1. From the Device WebUI, open the device help. Based on the WebUI location of the situation, go to the document location for that feature/function.

# ))( zpe

- 2. Check the Online help documentation at <u>www.zpesystems.com/support</u>
- 3. Visit our <u>Help Center Website</u> for the Knowledge Base and other useful links.

## Support Ticket

#### Submit an online ticket request

- 1. At the top-right of the WebUI, click **Submit a request**.
- 2. In the form, enter the required information. Provide as much detailed information as possible on the description of the problem or question.
- 3. If needed, a file or graphic image can be attached.
- 4. Select the **I'm not a robot** checkbox.
- 5. Click **Submit**.

A response email will be sent to you from ZPE Systems that confirms your request was received. The email includes the Support Ticket Number. This is needed as reference.

## **Updates and Patches**

To automatically receive information about important security patch announcements, future firmware updates, and other technical information, sign up to **The Loop** at <u>www.zpesystems.com/loop/</u>

# Virtual Serial Port (vSPC) on VM Servers

To redirect the VMware VM vSPC data to the Nodegrid Platform, the VM serial port needs to be configured.

#### **Configure vSPC on VM Server**

Ensure the VM is turned off.

- 1. Open the ESXi configuration (vSphere).
- 2. Select the VM and click Edit Virtual Machine Settings.
- 3. Click Add.
- 4. Click Serial Manager Device.
- 5. On the pop-up dialog, click Next.
- 6. Click Connect Via Network, then click Next.
- 7. Select Client (VM initiates the connection).t
- 8. (optional) For **Port URI**, enter **<group\_id>** where group\_id is an identifier used during the autodiscovery (to relate servers of the same group).
- 9. On vSPC URI, type telnet://<IP or Nodegrid Manager hostname>:9977.
- 10. Click Finish.





11. On the ESXi firewall, ensure the vSPC port is enabled. To confirm, go to **ESXi Configuration**, select **Security Profile** and click on **Properties**.

Hardware	Sienovni By Brofille						
Baioreaus	Sicarwiteess			Rativash	Properties		
	1990 Readinession (Assiines: Dines	(iony 'éarine!)					
H4branno or 19	terming (o)						
Stensogen	bliefewende II oogin Astrona (Astine i lõnen võine i õneg Astrona is)						
Histowarthing	II.dol						
Siensage: Adapteres	98 <u>8</u> 005a						
Heriowark Adapteurs	k Politi €hasili						
Advanced Settinors	>=====================================						
Revenue de la companya de la company	l ne all féantailty fauilte atóinea féanar féantai (féanite: Dúnan feang féantice)						
a seese a second second second	161 H2 <sup>6</sup> 10kae tunto em						
oftware	shungara						
	N33						
Licencerol Fesoluness	Dinta il Comzonla: UDC						
Time: Centiguastion	COIPI Nearsoan						
ISHES and Rendling	liintsweell			Radirash	Requirities		
Antihermitication Sensions	Amounting Communitients						
Press i Hansanani	o minio des	azozi, zozia (1008)	24				
	100.002/w6	5746 (1032)J NO93	24				
Virtual Machine Startup/Shuddeway		1993 mar., 208, 1002-9 483-2855 (11829)	24				
Virtual Hachine Swapile Location	10% Agran :	scant, scars (000e)	24				
Non-omility (Sociille)	whichcas: Clicant	20024-228 (10.22)	24				
Host Cache Ounigmainn	ANII Adarwan	222 (1833) 222	<i>P</i> .				
System Restaurce Alwestian	COIPI Nearanne: Nearannai	575699 (1003P)	<i>P</i> .				
Amend 304 Sedilinors	igniann	67999 (UROC')	23				
Advanced Colline	atomicije of informa Media Konstance	800800 (1002°) 100 f na trít	24				

12. On the *Remote Access* page, review the box related to VM serial port connected to vSPC.

*Outgoing Ports* should have a TCP port range starting from 1024 or higher. The port range must include the TCP port used on the vSPC URI field (default 9977).

y default, remote clients are preve	nted from accessing services o	n this host, and local clien	ts are prevente	d from	
ccessing services on remote hosts.					
elect a check box to provide access			vhen their ports	are	
pened and stop when all of their po	orts are closed, or as configure	d.			
Label	Incoming Ports	Outgoing Ports	Protocols	Daemon	
COIMI Next prints: Next wear	26/989/9		*(C3)(*	Rommingg	
w?vjędno aroz 6 filio anii	2002,7528		100 <b>0</b> 14	NAM	
100 BC3PC3bie anit	658	6.83	U UDDR#	NAM	
Absiliansans: iNCOOCHismit		382660	10036	NA	
WPH scalinal geomic o numera licration w	58/0C	100243-622285	*(CSII*	NAM	
COIMI Adamson	20236365		10036	ktunningg	
181: PACIFICANI		0 622625	*(CSII*	NA	
9899 M .		롗	U UDDR#	NAM	
w@ccanicarUJycoikaics/Mkamaoysar		830,2300000-4310000	*10.01°	NAME AND A DESCRIPTION OF br>A DESCRIPTION OF A DESCRIPTIONO	

## Modify Outgoing Port Range

1. Connect to the ESXi command line.



2. Execute the following commands:



3. Edit the port section:

4. Save the changes and then restart the firewall service.



For further information on VMware firewall, please refer to the VMware Knowledge Base.

# **Serial Port Pinout**

The tables below display serial port pinout information.



#### **Cisco-like Pinout**

Pin	Signal name	Input/output
1	СТЅ	IN
2	DCD	IN
3	RxD	IN
4	GND	N/A
5	GND	N/A
6	TxD	OUT
7	DTR	OUT
8	RTS	OUT

## Legacy Pinout

Pin	Signal name	Input/output
1	RTS	OUT
2	DTR	OUT
3	TxD	OUT
4	GND	N/A
5	CTS	IN
6	RxD	IN
7	DCD	IN
8	Unused	N/A

# Safety

Please refer to the links below for product safety information.

Nodegrid Serial Console

Nodegrid Services Router

Nodegrid Gate SR

Nodegrid Bold SR



Nodegrid Link SR

# **Quick Install Guide**

Please refer to the links below for product installation information.

Nodegrid Serial Console

Nodegrid Services Router

Nodegrid Gate SR

Nodegrid Bold SR

Nodegrid Link SR

## RoHS

Please refer to the links below for RoHS information.

Nodegrid Serial Console

Nodegrid Services Router

Nodegrid Gate SR

Nodegrid Bold SR

Nodegrid Link SR

## Data Persistence

In normal operation, when data logging is enabled (Configuration settings), this data is stored in non-volatile memory:

- user data from keystrokes
- managed devices output
- device monitoring data passing through a Nodegrid device

#### **Nodegrid Device Memory**

Nodegrid devices contain the following separate memory devices:

#### BIOS

Memory Size: 64MB Memory Type: NOR Flash Volatility: Nonvolatile User Data: No

#### Flash Disk

Memory Size: 32 GB or 64 GB. Other custom sizes may be used. Memory Type: SSD Volatility: Nonvolatile User Data: Yes. Partition/Data: sda2 - unit configuration sda5 - backup configuration sda8 - user home directories and log files

#### RAM



Memory Size: 4 GB or 8 GB Memory Type: DDR3 Volatility: Volatile User Data: Yes

# **Remove Data from Nonvolatile Memory**

## Soft Removal of User Data from Nonvolatile Memory

Removes files and installs factory default configuration on flash disk.

### **Restore Factory Default Configuration**

- 1. Shutdown Nodegrid device and power off.
- 2. To remove the device from the network, disconnect Ethernet cables.
- 3. Disconnect any USB storage device and USB network device connected to device.
- 4. To access Nodegrid unit, use one of these options:

Connect a terminal/workstation to the Nodegrid console port (RJ-45 console adapter) and a straight-through network cable.

Connect a HDMI monitor (HDMI port) and USB keyboard (USB port).

- 5. Power on the device.
- 6. On the following menu, Nodegrid Rescue Mode.

7. At the prompt ("bash-4.3#"), run this command (erases all files and loads factory configuration):

apply\_settings --factory-and-cleanlogs -f -h

8. Wait for this message:

Apply factory settings completed. INIT: Switching [ ... ] reboot: System halted



#### 9. Power off the unit.

#### Hard Removal - Secure Erase

This completely erases the flash disk. This procedure destroys ALL data on flash disk and render it unrecoverable even by data recovery services. After that, the Nodegrid software must be reinstalled via network.

#### **Fully Erase Nonvolatile Memory**

- 1. Shutdown Nodegrid device and power off.
- 2. To remove the device from the network, disconnect Ethernet cables.
- 3. Disconnect any USB storage device and USB network device connected to device.
- 4. To access Nodegrid unit, use one of these options:

Connect a terminal/workstation to the Nodegrid console port (RJ-45 console adapter) and a straight-through network cable.

Connect a HDMI monitor (HDMI port) and USB keyboard (USB port).

- 5. Power on the device.
- 6. When the BIOS setup page appears, press the 'Esc' key.
- 7. On the Grub Menu, select Nodegrid Platform Secure Erase.

8. Type 'erase' to permanently erase all data from the system:

Nodegrid Boot live - Secure Erase This action will completely erase the system. Using this procedure will destroy ALL data on the SSD and render it unrecoverable even by data recovery services. After executing this step, system software will no longer exist and must be reinstalled via network. Type 'erase' to secure erase the SSD or 'cancel' to reboot:



**NOTE**: Secure Erase requires the unit be power cycled (powered off and powered on) prior to the erase command execution. Otherwise, the following message displays and the system halts to allow the power cycle to be done.

Operation not supported. Unit must be power cycled prior to erase command. Wait for system halt and power cycle the unit. [ 4.614365] reboot: System halted

#### 9. Type **yes** to confirm.

Secure erase cannot be canceled once confirmed. Type 'yes' to confirm secure erase:

10. Wait for the **System halted** message.

```
Secure erase of SDD will start now... security_password="PasSWorD" /dev/sda: Issuing SECURITY_SET_PASS command, password="PasSWorD", user=user, mode=high security_password="PasSWorD" /dev/sda: Issuing SECURITY_ERASE command, password="PasSWorD", user=user Secure erase completed. System halting... [ 29.083186] reboot: System halted
```

#### 11. Power off the unit.

You can find a copy of the Letter of Volatility here.